



# ***TSK165x Embedded Tools Reference***

Legacy documentation  
refer to the Altium Wiki for current information

Software, hardware, documentation and related materials:

Copyright © 2008 Altium Limited. All Rights Reserved.

The material provided with this notice is subject to various forms of national and international intellectual property protection, including but not limited to copyright protection. You have been granted a non-exclusive license to use such material for the purposes stated in the end-user license agreement governing its use. In no event shall you reverse engineer, decompile, duplicate, distribute, create derivative works from or in any way exploit the material licensed to you except as expressly permitted by the governing agreement. Failure to abide by such restrictions may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, including but not limited to fines and imprisonment. Provided, however, that you are permitted to make one archival copy of said materials for back up purposes only, which archival copy may be accessed and used only in the event that the original copy of the materials is inoperable. Altium, Altium Designer, Board Insight, DXP, Innovation Station, LiveDesign, NanoBoard, NanoTalk, OpenBus, P-CAD, SimCode, Situs, TASKING, and Topological Autorouting and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Altium Limited or its subsidiaries. All other registered or unregistered trademarks referenced herein are the property of their respective owners and no trademark rights to the same are claimed. v8.0 31/3/08

## Table of Contents

<b>Assembly Language</b>	<b>1-1</b>
1.1 Assembly Syntax .....	1-1
1.2 Assembler Significant Characters .....	1-2
1.3 Operands of an Assembly Instruction .....	1-2
1.4 Symbol Names .....	1-2
1.5 Registers .....	1-3
1.6 Assembly Expressions .....	1-3
1.6.1 Numeric Constants .....	1-4
1.6.2 Strings .....	1-4
1.6.3 Expression Operators .....	1-4
1.7 Built-in Assembly Functions .....	1-5
1.7.1 Overview of Built-in Assembly Functions .....	1-5
1.7.2 Detailed Description of Built-in Assembly Functions .....	1-6
1.8 Assembler Directives .....	1-8
1.8.1 Overview of Assembler Directives .....	1-8
1.8.2 Detailed Description of Assembler Directives .....	1-10
1.9 Macro Operations .....	1-43
1.9.1 Defining a Macro .....	1-43
1.9.2 Calling a Macro .....	1-44
1.9.3 Using Operators for Macro Arguments .....	1-45
1.9.4 Using the .FOR and .REPEAT Directives as Macros .....	1-47
1.9.5 Conditional Assembly .....	1-47
1.10 Structured Control Statements .....	1-48
1.10.1 FOR Statement .....	1-48
1.10.2 WHILE Statement .....	1-49
1.10.3 REPEAT Statement .....	1-51
1.10.4 IF Statement .....	1-52
1.10.5 SWITCH Statement .....	1-53
1.10.6 BREAK Statement .....	1-55
1.10.7 CONTINUE Statement .....	1-56
1.10.8 Structured Control Expressions .....	1-57
1.11 Generic Instructions .....	1-58
<b>Tool Options</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2.1 Assembler Options .....	2-1
2.2 Linker Options .....	2-27
2.3 Control Program Options .....	2-57
2.4 Make Utility Options .....	2-82
2.5 Librarian Options .....	2-108
<b>List File Formats</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3.1 Assembler List File Format .....	3-1
3.2 Linker Map File Format .....	3-3
<b>Object File Formats</b>	<b>4-1</b>
4.1 IEEE-695 Format .....	4-1
4.1.1 Command Language Concept .....	4-1
4.1.2 Notational Conventions .....	4-2
4.1.3 Expressions .....	4-2
4.1.3.1 Functions without Operands .....	4-3
4.1.3.2 Monadic Functions .....	4-3
4.1.3.3 Dyadic Functions and Operators .....	4-4
4.1.3.4 MUFOM Variables .....	4-4
4.1.3.5 @INS and @EXT Operator .....	4-4

4.1.3.6	Conditional Expressions .....	4-4
4.1.4	MUFOM Commands .....	4-5
4.1.4.1	Module Level Commands .....	4-5
4.1.4.2	Comment and Checksum Command .....	4-5
4.1.4.3	Sections .....	4-6
4.1.4.4	Symbolic Name Declaration and Type Definition .....	4-7
4.1.4.5	Value Assignment .....	4-8
4.1.4.6	Loading Commands .....	4-8
4.1.4.7	Linkage Commands .....	4-9
4.1.5	MUFOM Functions .....	4-10
4.2	Motorola S-Record Format .....	4-13
4.3	Intel Hex Record Format .....	4-16

## **Linker Script Language 5-1**

5.1	Introduction .....	5-1
5.2	Structure of a Linker Script File .....	5-1
5.3	Syntax of the Linker Script Language .....	5-3
5.3.1	Preprocessing .....	5-3
5.3.2	Lexical Syntax .....	5-3
5.3.3	Identifiers .....	5-4
5.3.4	Expressions .....	5-4
5.3.5	Built-in Functions .....	5-5
5.3.6	LSL Definitions in the Linker Script File .....	5-6
5.3.7	Memory and Bus Definitions .....	5-6
5.3.8	Architecture Definition .....	5-7
5.3.9	Derivative Definition .....	5-9
5.3.10	Processor Definition and Board Specification .....	5-10
5.3.11	Section Layout Definition and Section Setup .....	5-10
5.4	Expression Evaluation .....	5-13
5.5	Semantics of the Architecture Definition .....	5-14
5.5.1	Defining an Architecture .....	5-15
5.5.2	Defining Internal Buses .....	5-15
5.5.3	Defining Address Spaces .....	5-15
5.5.4	Mappings .....	5-18
5.6	Semantics of the Derivative Definition .....	5-20
5.6.1	Defining a Derivative .....	5-20
5.6.2	Instantiating Core Architectures .....	5-20
5.6.3	Defining Internal Memory and Buses .....	5-21
5.7	Semantics of the Board Specification .....	5-22
5.7.1	Defining a Processor .....	5-22
5.7.2	Instantiating Derivatives .....	5-22
5.7.3	Defining External Memory and Buses .....	5-23
5.8	Semantics of the Section Setup Definition .....	5-24
5.8.1	Setting up a Section .....	5-24
5.9	Semantics of the Section Layout Definition .....	5-25
5.9.1	Defining a Section Layout .....	5-25
5.9.2	Creating and Locating Groups of Sections .....	5-26
5.9.3	Creating or Modifying Special Sections .....	5-30
5.9.4	Creating Symbols .....	5-32
5.9.5	Conditional Group Statements .....	5-33

## **Index**

## Manual Purpose and Structure

---

### **Windows Users**

The documentation explains and describes how to use the TASKING TSK165x toolset to program a TSK165x processor.

You can use the tools either with the graphical Altium Designer or from the command line in a command prompt window.

### **Structure**

The toolset documentation consists of a user's manual (*Using the TSK165x Embedded Tools*), which includes a Getting Started section, and a separate reference manual (this manual).

Start by reading the *Getting Started* in Chapter 1 of the user's manual.

The other chapters in the user's manual explain how to use the assembler, linker and the various utilities.

Once you are familiar with these tools, you can use this reference manual to lookup specific options and details to make full use of the TASKING toolset.

The reference manual describes the assembly language.

## Short Table of Contents

---

### **Chapter 1: Assembly Language**

Describes the specific features of the assembly language as well as 'directives', which are pseudo instructions that are interpreted by the assembler.

### **Chapter 2: Tool Options**

Contains a description of all tool options:

- Assembler options
- Linker options
- Control program options
- Make utility options
- Librarian options

### **Chapter 3: List File Formats**

Contains a description of the following list file formats:

- Assembler List File Format
- Linker Map File Format

### **Chapter 4: Object File Formats**

Contains a description of the following object file formats:

- IEEE-695 Object Format
- Motorola S-Record Format
- Intel Hex Record Format

### **Chapter 5: Linker Script Language**

Contains a description of the linker script language (LSL).

## Conventions Used in this Manual

### Notation for syntax

The following notation is used to describe the syntax of command line input:

<b>bold</b>	Type this part of the syntax literally.
<i>italics</i>	Substitute the italic word by an instance. For example:  <i>filename</i>  Place the name of a file in place of the word <i>filename</i> .
{ }	Encloses a list from which you must choose an item.
[ ]	Encloses items that are optional. For example  <b>as165x [ -? ]</b>  Both <b>as165x</b> and <b>as165x -?</b> are valid commands.
	Separates items in a list. Read it as OR.
...	You can repeat the preceding item zero or more times.

### Example

**as165x** [*option*]... *filename*

You can read this line as follows: enter the command **as165x** with or without an option, follow this by zero or more options and specify a *filename*. The following input lines are all valid:

```
as165x test.asm
as165x -g test.asm
as165x -g -l test.asm
```

Not valid is:

```
as165x -g
```

According to the syntax description, you have to specify a filename.

### Icons

The following illustrations are used in this manual:



Note: notes give you extra information.



Warning: read the information carefully. It prevents you from making serious mistakes or from losing information.



This illustration indicates actions you can perform with the mouse. Such as Altium Designer menu entries and dialogs.



Command line: type your input on the command line.



Reference: follow this reference to find related topics.

## Related Publications

---

### **MISRA-C**

- Guidelines for the Use of the C Language in Vehicle Based Software [MIRA limited, 1998]  
See also <http://www.misra.org.uk>
- MISRA-C:2004: Guidelines for the use of the C Language in critical systems [MIRA limited, 2004]  
See also <http://www.misra-c.com>

### **TASKING Tools**

- Using the TSK165x Embedded Tools  
[Altium, GU0108]
- TSK165x RISC MCU Core Reference  
[Altium, CR0114]





## 1 Assembly Language

### Summary

This chapter describes the most important aspects of the TASKING assembly language and contains a detailed description of all built-in assembly functions and assembler directives. For a complete overview of the architecture you are using and a description of the assembly instruction set, refer to the target's *Core Reference Manual*.

### 1.1 Assembly Syntax

An assembly program consists of zero or more statements. A statement may optionally be followed by a comment. Any source statement can be extended to more lines by including the line continuation character (\) as the last character on the line. The length of a source statement (first line and continuation lines) is only limited by the amount of available memory.

Mnemonics and directives are case insensitive. Labels, symbols, directive arguments, and literal strings are case sensitive.

The syntax of an assembly *statement* is:

`[label[:]] [instruction | directive | macro_call] [;comment]`

**label** A label is a special symbol which is assigned the value and type of the current program location counter. A label can consist of letters, digits and underscore characters (\_). The first character cannot be a digit. A label which is prefixed by whitespace (spaces or tabs) has to be followed by a colon (:). The size of an identifier is only limited by the amount of available memory.

Examples:

```
LAB1: ; This label is followed by a colon and
      ; can be prefixed by whitespace
LAB1  ; This label has to start at the beginning
      ; of a line
```

**instruction** An instruction consists of a mnemonic and zero, one or more operands. It must not start in the first column.

Operands are described in section 1.3, [Operands of an Assembly Instruction](#). The instructions are described in the target's *Core Reference Manual*.

The instruction can also be a so-called 'generic instruction'. Generic instructions are pseudo instructions (no instructions from the instruction set). Depending on the situation in which a generic instruction is used, the assembler replaces the generic instruction with appropriate real assembly instruction(s). For a complete list, see section 1.11, [Generic Instructions](#).

**directive** With directives you can control the assembler from within the assembly source. Except for preprocessing directives, these must not start in the first column. Directives are described in section 1.8, [Assembler Directives](#).

**macro\_call** A call to a previously defined macro. It must not start in the first column. See section 1.9 [Macro Operations](#).

**comment** Comment, preceded by a ; (semicolon).

You can use empty lines or lines with only comments.

## 1.2 Assembler Significant Characters

You can use all ASCII characters in the assembly source both in strings and in comments. Also the extended characters from the ISO 8859-1 (Latin-1) set are allowed.

Some characters have a special meaning to the assembler. Special characters associated with expression evaluation are described in section 1.6.3, [Expression Operators](#). Other special assembler characters are:

Character	Description
;	Start of a comment
\	Line continuation character or Macro operator: argument concatenation
?	Macro operator: return decimal value of a symbol
%	Macro operator: return hex value of a symbol
^	Macro operator: override local label
"	Macro string delimiter or Quoted string <b>.DEFINE</b> expansion character
'	String constants delimiter
@	Start of a built-in assembly function
\$	Location counter substitution
[ ]	Substring delimiter

Note that macro operators have a higher precedence than expression operators.

## 1.3 Operands of an Assembly Instruction

In an instruction, the mnemonic is followed by zero, one or more operands. An operand has one of the following types:

Operand	Description
<i>symbol</i>	A symbolic name as described in section 1.4, <a href="#">Symbol Names</a> . Symbols can also occur in expressions.
<i>register</i>	Any valid register as listed in section 1.5, <a href="#">Registers</a> .
<i>expression</i>	Any valid expression as described in section 1.6, <a href="#">Assembly Expressions</a> .
<i>address</i>	A combination of <i>expression</i> , <i>register</i> and <i>symbol</i> .

## 1.4 Symbol Names

### User-defined symbols

A user-defined *symbol* can consist of letters, digits and underscore characters (`_`). The first character cannot be a digit. The size of an identifier is only limited by the amount of available memory. The case of these characters is significant. You can define a symbol by means of a label declaration or an equate or set directive.

### Labels

Symbols used for memory locations are referred to as labels.

### Reserved symbols

Symbol names and other identifiers beginning with a period (`.`) are reserved for the system (for example for directives or section names). Instructions and names of core processor registers are also reserved. The case of these built-in symbols is insignificant.

## Examples

Valid symbol names:

```
loop_1
ENTRY
a_B_c
_aBC
```

Invalid symbol names:

```
1_loop      (starts with a number)
.DEFINE     (reserved directive name)
```

## 1.5 Registers

The following register names, either upper or lower case, should not be used for user-defined symbol names in an assembly language source file:

### TSK165x registers

```
F      W      PC8
```

The following special function registers should also not be used as symbol names in an assembly language source file. However it is allowed to redefine them.

### TSK165x special function registers

INDF	TMR0	PCL	STATUS	FSR	PORTA	PORTB	PORTC
C	DC	Z	PD	TO	PA0	PA1	
RA0	RA1	RA2	RA3				
RB0	RB1	RB2	RB3	RB4	RB5	RB6	RB7
RC0	RC1	RC2	RC3	RC4	RC5	RC6	RC7

## 1.6 Assembly Expressions

An expression is a combination of symbols, constants, operators, and parentheses which represent a value that is used as an operand of an assembler instruction (or directive).

Expressions may contain user-defined labels (and their associated integer values), and any combination of integers or ASCII literal strings.

Expressions follow the conventional rules of algebra and boolean arithmetic.

Expressions that can be evaluated at assembly time are called *absolute expressions*. Expressions where the result is unknown until all sections have been combined and located, are called *relocatable* or *relative expressions*.

When any operand of an expression is relocatable, the entire expression is relocatable. Relocatable expressions are emitted in the object file and evaluated by the linker.

The assembler evaluates expressions with 64-bit precision in two's complement.

The syntax of an *expression* can be any of the following:

- *numeric contant*
- *string*
- *symbol*
- *expression binary\_operator expression*
- *unary\_operator expression*
- *( expression )*
- *function call*

All types of expressions are explained in separate sections.

## 1.6.1 Numeric Constants

Numeric constants can be used in expressions. If there is no prefix, by default the assembler assumes the number is a decimal number.

Base	Description	Example
Binary	A <b>0b</b> prefix followed by binary digits (0,1). Or use a <b>b</b> suffix	0b1101 11001010b
Hexadecimal	A <b>0x</b> prefix followed by a hexadecimal digits (0–9, A–F, a–f). Or use a <b>h</b> suffix	0x12FF 0x45 0fa10h
Decimal, integer	Decimal digits (0–9).	12 1245

Table 1–1: Numeric constants

## 1.6.2 Strings

ASCII characters, enclosed in single (') or double (") quotes constitute an ASCII string. Strings between double quotes allow symbol substitution by a `.DEFINE` directive, whereas strings between single quotes are always literal strings. Both types of strings can contain escape characters.

Strings constants in expressions are evaluated to a number (each character is replaced by its ASCII value). Strings in expressions can have a size of up to 4 characters or less depending on the operand of an instruction or directive; any subsequent characters in the string are ignored. In this case the assembler issues a warning. An exception to this rule is when a string is used in a `.DB`, `.DH`, `.DW` or `.DL` assembler directive; in that case all characters result in a constant value of the specified size. Null strings have a value of 0.

Square brackets (`[ ]`) delimit a substring operation in the form:

`[string,offset,length]`

*offset* is the start position within *string*. *length* is the length of the desired substring. Both values may not exceed the size of *string*.

### Examples

```
'ABCD'           ; (0x41424344)
'' '79'          ; to enclose a quote double it
"A\"BC"          ; or to enclose a quote escape it
'AB'+1           ; (0x4143) string used in expression
''              ; null string
['TASKING',0,4]  ; results in the substring 'TASK'
```

## 1.6.3 Expression Operators

The next table shows the assembler operators. They are ordered according to their precedence. Operators of the same precedence are evaluated left to right. Parenthetical expressions have the highest priority (innermost first).

Valid operands include numeric constants, literal ASCII strings and symbols.

Type	Operator	Name	Description
	( )	parenthesis	Expressions enclosed by parenthesis are evaluated first.
Unary	+	plus	Returns the value of its operand.
	-	minus	Returns the negative of its operand.
	~	complement	Returns complement, integer only
	!	logical negate	Returns 1 if the operands' value is 0; otherwise 0. For example, if <code>buf</code> is 0 then <code>!buf</code> is 1.

Type	Operator	Name	Description
Arithmetic	*	multiplication	Yields the product of two operands.
	/	division	Yields the quotient of the division of the first operand by the second. With integers, the divide operation produces a truncated integer.
	%	modulo	Integer only: yields the remainder from a division of the first operand by the second.
	+	addition	Yields the sum of its operands.
	-	subtraction	Yields the difference of its operands.
Shift	<<	shift left	Integer only: shifts the left operand to the left (zero-filled) by the number of bits specified by the right operand.
	>>	shift right	Integer only: shifts the left operand to the right (sign bit extended) by the number of bits specified by the right operand.
Relational	<	less than	Returns: an integer 1 if the indicated condition is TRUE. an integer 0 if the indicated condition is FALSE.
	<=	less or equal	
	>	greater than	
	>=	greater or equal	
	==	equal	
	!=	not equal	
Bitwise	&	AND	Integer only: yields bitwise AND
		OR	Integer only: yields bitwise OR
	^	exclusive OR	Integer only: yields bitwise exclusive OR
Logical	&&	logical AND	Returns an integer 1 if both operands are non-zero; otherwise, it returns an integer 0.
		logical OR	Returns an integer 1 if either of the operands is non-zero; otherwise, it returns an integer 1
Dot	.	Dot	Singles out a bit number using the syntax: <i>byte.bitpos</i>

Table 1-2: Assembly expression operators

## 1.7 Built-in Assembly Functions

The TASKING assemblers have several built-in functions to support data conversion, string comparison, and math computations. You can use functions as terms in any expression.

### Syntax of an assembly function

```
@function_name([argument[,argument]...])
```

Functions start with '@' character and have zero or more arguments, and are always followed by opening and closing parentheses. White space (a blank or tab) is not allowed between the function name and the opening parenthesis and between the (comma-separated) arguments.

### 1.7.1 Overview of Built-in Assembly Functions

The following table provides an overview of all built-in assembly functions. Next all functions are described into more detail. *expr* can be any assembly expression resulting in an integer value. Expressions are explained in section 1.6, [Assembly Expressions](#).

#### Overview of assembly functions

Function	Description
@ARG('symbol'   <i>expr</i> )	Test whether macro argument is present
@CAST( <i>type</i> , <i>expr</i> )	Cast result of <i>expr</i> to <i>type</i>
@CNT()	Return number of macro arguments

Function	Description
@CPU( <i>string</i> )	Test if current CPU matches <i>string</i>
@DEFINED(' <i>symbol</i> '   <i>symbol</i> )	Test whether <i>symbol</i> exists
@LSB( <i>expr</i> )	Least significant byte of the expression
@LSW( <i>expr</i> )	Least significant word of the expression
@MSB( <i>expr</i> )	Most significant byte of the expression
@MSW( <i>expr</i> )	Most significant word of the expression
@STRCAT( <i>str1</i> , <i>str2</i> )	Concatenate <i>str1</i> and <i>str2</i>
@STRCMP( <i>str1</i> , <i>str2</i> )	Compare <i>str1</i> with <i>str2</i>
@STRLEN( <i>str</i> )	Return length of string
@STRPOS( <i>str1</i> , <i>str2</i> [, <i>start</i> ])	Return position of <i>str1</i> in <i>str2</i>

## 1.7.2 Detailed Description of Built-in Assembly Functions

### @ARG('symbol' | *expression*)

Returns integer 1 if the macro argument represented by *symbol* or *expression* is present, 0 otherwise.

You can specify the argument with a *symbol* name (the name of a macro argument enclosed in single quotes) or with *expression* (the ordinal number of the argument in the macro formal argument list).

If you use this function when macro expansion is not active, the assembler issues a warning.

Example:

```
.IF @ARG('TWIDDLE') ;is argument twiddle present?
.IF @ARG(1)          ;is first argument present?
```

### @CAST(*type*,*expression*)

Returns the result of *expression*, but with the specified *type*.

This function can be useful when you assemble with expression type-checking enabled (option **--type-checking**), and the assembler reports a type conflict. You can then cast the expression to the correct type.

The following types are allowed:

data, code, bit, byte, word, dword

### @CNT()

Returns the number of macro arguments of the current macro expansion as an integer.

If you use this function when macro expansion is not active, the assembler issues a warning.

Example:

```
ARGCOUNT .SET @CNT() ; reserve argument count
```

### @CPU('processor\_type')

With the @CPU function you can check whether the source code is being assembled for a certain processor type. The function evaluates to TRUE when the specified *processor\_type* matches the processor type that was specified with the option **--cpu=cpu**.

This function is useful to create conditional code for several targets as shown in the example.

Example:

```
.IF @CPU('tsk165a')      ; true if you specified option --cpu=tsk165a
... ; code for the TSK165A
.ELIF @CPU('tsk165b')    ; true if you specified option --cpu=tsk165b
... ; code for the TSK165B
.ELSE
... ; code for other processor types
.ENDIF
```



Assembler option `--cpu` (Select CPU) in section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.

### **@DEFINED(symbol' | symbol)**

Returns 1 if *symbol* has been defined, 0 otherwise. If *symbol* is quoted, it is looked up as a `.DEFINE` symbol; if it is not quoted, it is looked up as an ordinary symbol, macro or label.

Example:

```
.IF @DEFINED('ANGLE')      ;is symbol ANGLE defined?
.ELSE
.ELSEIF @DEFINED(ANGLE)    ;does label ANGLE exist?
.ELSE

```

### **@LSB(expression)**

Returns the *least* significant byte of the result of the *expression*.  
The result of the expression is calculated as 16 bits.

### **@LSW(expression)**

Returns the *least* significant word (bits 0..15) of the result of the *expression*.  
The result of the expression is calculated as a long (32 bits).

### **@MSB(expression)**

Returns the *most* significant byte of the result of the *expression*.  
The result of the expression is calculated as 16 bits.

### **@MSW(expression)**

Returns the *most* significant word (bits 16..31) of the result of the *expression*.  
The result of the expression is calculated as a long (32 bits).

### **@STRCAT(string1,string2)**

Concatenates *string1* and *string2* and returns them as a single string.  
You must enclose *string1* and *string2* either with single quotes or with double quotes.

Example:

```
.DEFINE ID "@STRCAT('TAS','KING')"; ID = 'TASKING'
```

### **@STRCMP(string1,string2)**

Compares *string1* with *string2* by comparing the characters in the string. The function returns the difference between the characters at the first position where they disagree, or zero when the strings are equal:

```
<0    if string1 < string2
0      if string1 == string2
>0    if string1 > string2
```

Example:

```
.IF (@STRCMP(STR,'MAIN'))==0 ; does STR equal 'MAIN'?
```

### @STRLEN(string)

Returns the length of *string* as an integer.

Example:

```
SLEN SET @STRLEN('string')      ; SLEN = 6
```

### @STRPOS(string1,string2[,start])

Returns the position of *string2* in *string1* as an integer. If *string2* does not occur in *string1*, the last string position + 1 is returned.

With *start* you can specify the starting position of the search. If you do not specify start, the search is started from the beginning of *string1*.

Example:

```
ID .set @STRPOS('TASKING','ASK')  ; ID = 1  
ID .set @STRPOS('TASKING','BUG')  ; ID = 7
```

## 1.8 Assembler Directives

An assembler directive is simply a message to the assembler. Assembler directives are not translated into machine instructions, but can produce data. There are three types of assembler directives.

- Assembler directives that tell the assembler how to go about translating instructions into machine code. This is the most typical form of assembly directives. Typically they tell the assembler where to put a program in memory, what space to allocate for variables, and allow you to initialize memory with data. When the assembly source is assembled, a location counter in the assembler keeps track of where the code and data is to go in memory.  
The following directives fall under this group:
  - Assembly control directives
  - Symbol definition directives
  - Data definition / Storage allocation directives
  - HLL directives
  - Structure control statements
- Directives that are interpreted by the macro preprocessor. These directives tell the macro preprocessor how to manipulate your assembly code before it is actually being assembled. You can use these directives to write macros and to write conditional source code. Parts of the code that do not match the condition, will not be assembled at all. Unlike other directives, preprocessor directives can start in the first column.
- Some directives act as assembler options and most of them indeed do have an equivalent assembler (command line) option. The advantage of using a directive is that with such a directive you can overrule the assembler option for a particular part of the code. A typical example is to tell the assembler with an option to generate a list file while with the directives `.NOLIST` and `.LIST` you overrule this option for a part of the code that you do *not* want to appear in the list file. Directives of this kind sometimes are called *controls*.

Each assembler directive has its own syntax. Some assembler directives can be preceded with a label. If you do not precede an assembler directive with a label, you must use white space instead (spaces or tabs). You can use assembler directives in the assembly code as pseudo instructions.

### 1.8.1 Overview of Assembler Directives

The following tables provide an overview of all assembler directives. For a detailed description of these directives, refer to section 1.8.2, [Detailed Description of Assembler Directives](#).

#### Overview of assembly control directives

Directive	Description
<code>.END</code>	Indicates the end of an assembly module
<code>.INCLUDE</code>	Include file
<code>.MESSAGE</code>	Programmer generated message



### Overview of symbol definition directives

Directive	Description
<code>.EQU</code>	Set permanent value to a symbol
<code>.EXTERN</code>	Import global section symbol
<code>.GLOBAL</code>	Declare global section symbol
<code>.LABEL</code>	Define a label of specified type
<code>.RESUME</code>	Resume a previously defined section
<code>.SECTION</code>	Start a new section
<code>.SET</code>	Set temporary value to a symbol
<code>.WEAK</code>	Mark a symbol as 'weak'

### Overview of data definition / storage allocation directives

Directive	Description
<code>.ALIGN</code>	Align location counter
<code>.BS / .BSBIT / .BSB / .BSW / .BSL</code>	Define block storage (initialized)
<code>.DBIT</code>	Define bit
<code>.DB</code>	Define byte
<code>.DH</code>	Define half word
<code>.DW</code>	Define word
<code>.DL</code>	Define long word
<code>.DS / .DSBIT / .DSB / .DSW / .DSL</code>	Define storage
<code>.OFFSET</code>	Move location counter forwards

### Overview of macro and conditional assembly directives

Directive	Description
<code>.DEFINE</code>	Define substitution string
<code>.BREAK</code>	Break out of current macro expansion
<code>.REPEAT / .ENDREP</code>	Repeat sequence of source lines
<code>.FOR / .ENDFOR</code>	Repeat sequence of source lines <i>n</i> times
<code>.IF / .ELIF / .ELSE</code>	Conditional assembly directive
<code>.ENDIF</code>	End of conditional assembly directive
<code>.MACRO / .ENDM</code>	Define macro
<code>.UNDEF</code>	Undefine <code>.DEFINE</code> symbol or macro

### Overview of listing control assembly directives

Directive	Description
<code>.LIST / .NOLIST</code>	Print / do not print source lines to list file
<code>.PAGE</code>	Set top of page/size of page
<code>.TITLE</code>	Set program title in header of assembly list file

### Overview of HLL directives

Directive	Description
<code>.CALLS</code>	Pass call tree information

## Overview of structured control statement directive

Directive	Description
<code>.GEN</code>	Generate assembly instruction(s) for structured control statements

## 1.8.2 Detailed Description of Assembler Directives

### `.ALIGN`

#### Syntax

`.ALIGN` *expression*

#### Description

With the `.ALIGN` directive you tell the assembler to align the location counter.

When the assembler encounters the `.ALIGN` directive, it moves the location counter forwards to an address that is aligned as specified by *expression* and places the next instruction or directive on that address. The alignment is in minimal addressable units (MAUs). The assembler fills the 'gap' with NOP instructions. If the location counter is already aligned on the specified alignment, it remains unchanged. The location of absolute sections will not be changed.

The *expression* must be a power of two: 2, 4, 8, 16, ... If you specify another value, the assembler changes the alignment to the next higher power of two and issues a warning.



In bit-type sections *expression* is in number of bits.

#### Examples

```
.SECTION code, code
.ALIGN 16      ; the assembler aligns
instruction    ; this instruction at 16 MAUs and
               ; fills the 'gap' with NOP instructions.

.SECTION code, code
.ALIGN 12      ; WRONG: not a power of two, the
instruction    ; assembler aligns this instruction at
               ; 16 MAUs and issues a warning.
```

## **.BREAK**

### **Syntax**

**.BREAK**

### **Description**

The **.BREAK** directive causes immediate termination of a macro expansion, a **.FOR** loop expansion or a **.REPEAT** loop expansion. In case of nested loops or macros, the **.BREAK** directive returns to the previous level of expansion.

The **.BREAK** directive is, for example, useful in combination with the **.IF** directive to terminate expansion when error conditions are detected.

### **Example**

```
.FOR MYVAR IN 10 TO 20
...    ;
...    ; assembly source lines
...    ;
.IF MYVAR > 15
    .BREAK
.ENDIF
.ENDREP
```

## **.BS/.BSBIT/.BSB/.BSH/.BSW/.BSL**

### Syntax

[*label*] **.BS** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

[*label*] **.BSBIT** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

[*label*] **.BSB** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

[*label*] **.BSH** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

[*label*] **.BSW** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

[*label*] **.BSL** *expression1* [, *expression2*]

### Description

With the **.BS** directive (Block Storage) the assembler reserves a block of memory. The reserved block of memory is initialized to the value of *expression2*, or zero if omitted.

With *expression1* you specify the number of minimum addressable units (MAUs) you want to reserve, and how much the location counter will advance. The expression must be an integer greater than zero and cannot contain any forward references to address labels (labels that have not yet been defined).

In a bit-type section, the MAU size is 1, the **.BS** directive initializes a number of bits equal to the result of the expression.

With *expression2* you can specify a value to initialize the block with. Only the least significant MAU of *expression2* is used. If you omit *expression2*, the default is zero.

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.



Initialization of a block of memory only happens in sections with section attribute `init` or `romdata`. In other sections, the assembler issues a warning and only reserves space, just as with **.DS**.

The **.BSBIT**, **.BSB**, **.BSH**, **.BSW** and **.BSL** directives are variants of the **.BS** directive:

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>.BSBIT</b> | The <i>expression1</i> argument specifies the number of bits to reserve. You can only use this directive in sections of type <code>bit</code> .                             |
| <b>.BSB</b>   | The <i>expression1</i> argument specifies the number of bytes to reserve. In a bit-type section, the <b>.BSB</b> directive still initializes 8 bits.                        |
| <b>.BSH</b>   | Same as the <b>.BSB</b> directive.  |
| <b>.BSW</b>   | The <i>expression1</i> argument specifies the number of words to reserve (one word is 16 bits). In a bit-type section, the <b>.BSW</b> directive still initializes 16 bits. |
| <b>.BSL</b>   | The <i>expression1</i> argument specifies the number of longs to reserve (one long is 32 bits). In a bit-type section, the <b>.BSL</b> directive still initializes 32 bits. |

### Example

The **.BSB** directive is for example useful to define and initialize an array that is only partially filled:

```
.section data, data, init
.DB 84,101,115,116 ; initialize 4 bytes
.BSB 96,0xFF      ; reserve another 96 bytes, initialized with 0xFF
```

### Related information



**.DS** (Define Storage)

## **.CALLS**

### **Syntax**

```
.CALLS 'caller', 'callee'
```

### **Description**

With this directive you indicate that a function *caller* calls another function *callee*.

The linker uses the `.CALLS` information to build a call graph.

### **Example**

```
.CALLS '_main', '_nfunc'
```

Indicates that the function `_main` calls the function `_nfunc`

## .DB

### Syntax

[*label*] **.DB** *argument*[*argument*]...

### Description

With the **.DB** directive (Define Byte) the assembler allocates and initializes one byte of memory for each *argument*.

An *argument* can be:

- a single or multiple character string constant
- an integer expression
- NULL (indicated by two adjacent commas: ,,)

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

Multiple arguments are stored in successive address locations. If an argument is NULL, its corresponding address location is filled with zeros.

Integer arguments are stored as is, but must be byte values (within the range 0–255); floating-point numbers are not allowed. If the evaluated expression is out of the range [–256, +255] the assembler issues an error. For negative values within that range, the assembler adds 256 to the specified value (for example, –254 is stored as 2).

In case of single and multiple character strings, each character is stored in consecutive bytes whose lower seven bits represent the ASCII value of the character. The standard C escape sequences are allowed:

```
.DB 'R'          ; = 0x52
.DB 'AB',, 'D'   ; = 0x41420043 (second argument is empty)
```



When you use the **.DB** directive in a bit-type section, each argument initializes 8 bits, and the location counter of the current section is incremented with 8 bits.

When you use the **.DB** directive in a code section, this is translated into RETLW instructions.

### Example

```
TABLE:  .DB 14,253,0x62,'ABCD'
CHARS:  .DB 'A','B',, 'C','D'
```

### Related information



**.BS** (Block Storage)  
**.DS** (Define Storage)  
**.DBIT** (Define Bit)  
**.DH** (Define Half Word)  
**.DW** (Define Word)  
**.DL** (Define Long)

## .DBIT

### Syntax

`[label] .DBIT argument[,argument]...`

### Description

With the `.DBIT` directive (Define Bit) you allocate and initialize memory in bit units for each *argument*.

You can use the `.DBIT` directive only within sections of the type `bit`.

An *argument* is 0 or 1.

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

### Example

```
NBITS:  .DBIT 1,0,1,1      ; allocate and initialize four bits
```

### Related information



- [.BS](#) (Block Storage)
- [.DS](#) (Define Storage)
- [.DB](#) (Define Byte)
- [.DH](#) (Define Half Word)
- [.DW](#) (Define Word)
- [.DL](#) (Define Long)
- [.SECTION](#) (Start a new section)

## .DEFINE

### Syntax

**.DEFINE** *symbol string*

### Description

With the **.DEFINE** directive you define a substitution string that you can use on all following source lines. The assembler searches all succeeding lines for an occurrence of *symbol*, and replaces it with *string*. If the *symbol* occurs in a double quoted string it is also replaced. Strings between single quotes are not expanded.

This directive is useful for providing better documentation in the source program. A *symbol* can consist of letters, digits and underscore characters (`_`), and the first character cannot be a digit.

The assembler issues a warning if you redefine an existing symbol.

### Example

Suppose you defined the symbol `LEN` with the substitution string `"32"`:

```
.DEFINE LEN "32"
```

Then you can use the symbol `LEN` for example as follows:

```
.DS LEN  
.MESSAGE I "The length is: LEN"
```

The assembler preprocessor replaces `LEN` with `"32"` and assembles the following lines:

```
.DS 32  
.MESSAGE I "The length is: 32"
```

### Related information



**.UNDEF** (Undefine a **.DEFINE** symbol or macro)  
**.MACRO/.ENDM** (Define a macro)



## .DH

### Syntax

`[label] .DH argument[,argument]...`

### Description

With the `.DH` directive (Define Half Word) you allocate and initialize a half word of memory for each *argument*.

A half word is 8 bits (byte), so the `.DH` directive is the same as the `.DB` directive.

An *argument* is:

- a single or multiple character string constant
- an expression
- NULL (indicated by two adjacent commas: ,,)

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

Multiple arguments are stored in successive half word address locations. If an argument is NULL, its corresponding address location is filled with zeros.

Integer arguments are stored as is, but must be byte values (within the range 0–255); floating-point numbers are not allowed. If the evaluated expression is out of the range [–256, +255] the assembler issues an error. For negative values within that range, the assembler adds 256 to the specified value (for example, –254 is stored as 2).

In case of single and multiple character strings, each character is stored in consecutive bytes whose lower seven bits represent the ASCII value of the character. The standard C escape sequences are allowed:

```
.DH 'AB',, 'D' => 0x41
                  0x42
                  0x00 (second argument is empty)
                  0x44
```



When you use the `.DH` directive in a bit-type section, each argument initializes 8 bits, and the location counter of the current section is incremented with the same number of bits.

When you use the `.DH` directive in a code section, this is translated into RETLW instructions.

### Example

```
TABLE: .DH 14,253,0x62,'ABCD'
CHARS: .DH 'A','B',, 'C','D'
```

### Related information



[.BS](#) (Block Storage)  
[.DS](#) (Define Storage)  
[.DBIT](#) (Define Bit)  
[.DB](#) (Define Byte)  
[.DW](#) (Define Word)  
[.DL](#) (Define Long)

## .DL

### Syntax

[*label*] **.DL** *argument*[,*argument*]...

### Description

With the **.DL** directive (Define Long) you allocate and initialize four bytes of memory for each *argument*.

An *argument* is:

- a single or multiple character string constant
- an expression
- NULL (indicated by two adjacent commas: ,,)

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

Multiple arguments are stored in sets of four bytes. If an argument is NULL, its corresponding address locations are filled with zeros.

Long arguments are stored as is. Floating-point values are not allowed.

If the evaluated argument is too large to be represented in a long, the assembler issues an error and truncates the value.

In case of character strings, each character is stored in the least significant byte of a long whose lower seven bits represent the ASCII value of the character:

```
.DL 'AB',, 'D' => 0x00000041
                  0x00000042
                  0x00000000 (second argument is empty)
                  0x00000044
```



When you use the **.DL** directive in a bit-type section, each argument initializes 32 bits, and the location counter of the current section is incremented with the same number of bits.

### Example

```
TABLE: .DL 14,253,0x62,'ABCD'
CHARS: .DL 'A','B',, 'C','D'
```

### Related information



**.BS** (Block Storage)  
**.DS** (Define Storage)  
**.DBIT** (Define Bit)  
**.DB** (Define Byte)  
**.DH** (Define Half Word)  
**.DW** (Define Word)

## .DS/.DSBIT/.DSB/.DSH/.DSW/.DSL

### Syntax

[*label*] **.DS** *expression*

[*label*] **.DSBIT** *expression*

[*label*] **.DSB** *expression*

[*label*] **.DSH** *expression*

[*label*] **.DSW** *expression*

[*label*] **.DSL** *expression*

### Description

With the **.DS** directive (Define Storage) the assembler reserves a block of memory. The reserved block of memory is not initialized to any value.

With the *expression* you specify the number of minimum addressable units (MAUs) that you want to reserve. The expression must evaluate to an integer larger than zero and cannot contain references to symbols that are not yet defined in the assembly source.

In a bit-type section, the MAU size is 1, the **.DS** directive reserves a number of bits equal to the result of the expression.

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.



You cannot use the **.DS** directive in sections with attribute `init`. If you need to reserve *initialized* space in an `init` section, use the **.BS** directive instead.

The **.DSBIT**, **.DSB**, **.DSH**, **.DSW** and **.DSL** directives are variants of the **.DS** directive:

<b>.DSBIT</b>	The <i>expression</i> argument specifies the number of bits to reserve.
<b>.DSB</b>	The <i>expression</i> argument specifies the number of bytes to reserve. In a bit-type section, the <b>.DSB</b> directive still reserves 8 bits.
<b>.DSH</b>	Same as the <b>.DSB</b> directive.
<b>.DSW</b>	The <i>expression</i> argument specifies the number of words to reserve (one word is 16 bits). In a bit-type section, the <b>.DSW</b> directive still reserves 16 bits.
<b>.DSL</b>	The <i>expression</i> argument specifies the number of longs to reserve (one long is 32 bits). In a bit-type section, the <b>.DSL</b> directive still reserves 32 bits.

### Example

```
RES:  .DS 5+3    ; allocate 8 bytes
```

### Related information



- .BS** (Block Storage)
- .DBIT** (Define Bit)
- .DB** (Define Byte)
- .DH** (Define Half Word)
- .DW** (Define Word)
- .DL** (Define Long)

## .DW

### Syntax

[*label*] **.DW** *argument*[,*argument*]...

### Description

With the **.DW** directive (Define Word) you allocate and initialize one word of memory for each *argument*.

One word is 16 bits.

An *argument* is:

- a single or multiple character string constant
- an expression
- NULL (indicated by two adjacent commas: ,,)

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

Multiple arguments are stored in sets of two bytes. If an argument is NULL, its corresponding address locations are filled with zeros.

Word arguments are stored as is. Floating-point values are not allowed. If the evaluated argument is too large to be represented in a word, the assembler issues a warning and truncates the value.

In case of character strings, each character is stored in the least significant byte of a word which represents the ASCII value of the character:

```
.DW 'AB' , , 'D' => 0x0041
                   0x0042
                   0x0000 (second argument is empty)
                   0x0044
```



When you use the **.DW** directive in a bit-type section, each argument initializes 16 bits, and the location counter of the current section is incremented with the same number of bits.

### Example

```
TABLE:  .DW 14,253,0x62,'ABCD'
CHARS:  .DW 'A','B',,,'C','D'
```

### Related information



**.BS** (Block Storage)  
**.DS** (Define Storage)  
**.DBIT** (Define Bit)  
**.DB** (Define Byte)  
**.DH** (Define Half Word)  
**.DL** (Define Long)

## **.END**

### **Syntax**

**.END**

### **Description**

With the `.END` directive you tell the assembler that the end of the module is reached. If the assembler finds assembly source lines beyond the `.END` directive, it ignores those lines and issues a warning.

### **Example**

```
.section code, code
; source lines
.END                ; End of assembly module
```

## .EQU

### Syntax

*symbol* .EQU *expression*

### Description

With the .EQU directive you assign the value of *expression* to *symbol* permanently. Once defined, you cannot redefine the *symbol*. With the .GLOBAL directive you can define the symbol global.

The *expression* can either be absolute or relocatable and cannot contain forward references. Normally, the defined symbol gets the same type as the result of the expression. However, when the resulting expression has type “none” the symbol gets no type when the .EQU is used outside a section and it gets the type of the section when it is defined inside a section.

### Example

```
MYSYMBOL1 .EQU 0x4000 ; gets no type

        .SECTION code, code
_START:
        .SECTION data, data
MYSYMBOL2 .EQU 0x4100 ; gets type data

MYSYMBOL3 .EQU _START ; gets type of the expression:
                ; because _START is defined in
                ; a section with type CODE, the
                ; symbol gets type CODE.

        .END
```

You cannot redefine the used symbols.

### Related information



[.SET \(Set temporary value to a symbol\)](#)

## .EXTERN

### Syntax

```
.EXTERN symbol [:type] [,symbol [:type]]...
```

### Description

With the `.EXTERN` directive you define an *external* symbol. It means that the symbol is referenced in the current module while it is defined outside the current module.

You must define the symbols either outside any module or declare it as globally accessible within another module with the `.GLOBAL` directive.

The type of the global symbol which is referenced with the `.EXTERN` directive is determined from its definition. The assembler then uses the *type* information of the `.EXTERN` directive to check the symbol's use: if the symbol does not fit the instruction's operand, the assembler issues a warning.

If you do not specify *type*, the assembler does not check the use of the specified symbol.

Each target has a specific set of types as described in the [.SECTION \(Start a new section\)](#) directive.

If you do not use the `.EXTERN` directive and the symbol is not defined within the current module, the assembler issues a warning and inserts the `.EXTERN` directive.

### Example

```
.EXTERN  AA,CC,DD  ; defined elsewhere  
.EXTERN  AA:DATA   ; assembler checks for type
```

### Related information



[.GLOBAL](#) (Declare global section symbol)

## .FOR/.ENDFOR

### Syntax

```
[label] .FOR var IN expression[,expression]...
```

```
....  
.ENDFOR
```

or:

```
[label] .FOR var IN start TO end [STEP step]
```

```
....  
.ENDFOR
```

### Description

With the .FOR/ .ENDFOR directive you can repeat a sequence of assembly source lines with an iterator. As shown by the syntax, you can use the .FOR/ .ENDFOR in two ways.

1. In the first method, the loop is repeated as many times as the number of arguments following IN. If you use the symbol *var* in the assembly lines between .FOR and .ENDFOR, for each repetition the symbol *var* is substituted by a subsequent *expression* from the argument list. If the argument is a null, then the loop is repeated with each occurrence of the symbol *var* removed.
2. In the second method, the loop is repeated using the symbol *var* as a counter. The counter passes all integer values from *start* to *end* with a *step*. If you do not specify *step*, the counter is increased by one for every repetition.

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

### Example

In the following example the loop is repeated 4 times (there are four arguments). With the .DB directive you allocate and initialize a byte of memory for each repetition of the loop (a word for the .DW directive). Effectively, the preprocessor duplicates the .DB and .DW directives four times in the assembly source.

```
.FOR VAR1 IN 1,2+3,4,12  
  .DB VAR1  
  .DW (VAR1*VAR1)  
.ENDFOR
```

In the following example the loop is repeated 16 times. With the .DL directive you allocate and initialize four bytes of memory for each repetition of the loop. Effectively, the preprocessor duplicates the .DL directive 16 times in the assembled file, and substitutes VAR2 with the subsequent numbers.

```
.FOR VAR2 IN 1 to 0x10  
  .DL (VAR1*VAR1)  
.ENDFOR
```

### Related information



[.REPEAT/.ENDREP \(Repeat sequence of source lines\)](#)



## **.GEN**

### **Syntax**

`[label] .GEN structured-control-statement`

for example:

```
[label] .GEN FOR var = start {DOWNTO | TO} end [BY step]
....
.GEN ENDFOR
```

### **Description**

With the `.GEN` directive you can generate the appropriate TSK165x assembly language instructions for the structured control statement. You can use constructs like loops (FOR, WHILE, REPEAT), conditional control (IF/ELSE) or a C language alike switch implementation (SWITCH).

### **Related information**



For detailed information and examples see section 1.10, [Structured Control Statements](#)

## .GLOBAL

### Syntax

**.GLOBAL** *symbol* [, *symbol*] ...

### Description

All symbols or labels defined in the current section or module are local to the module by default. You can change this default behavior with assembler option **-ig**.

With the **.GLOBAL** directive you declare one or more symbols as global. It means that the specified symbols are defined within the current section or module, and that those definitions should be accessible by all modules.

The type of the global defined symbol is determined by its definition.

To access a symbol, defined with **.GLOBAL**, from another module, use the **.EXTERN** directive.

Only program labels and symbols defined with **.EQU** can be made global.

### Example

```
LOOPA .EQU 1           ; definition of symbol LOOPA
      .GLOBAL LOOPA    ; LOOPA will be globally
                       ; accessible by other modules
```

### Related information



**.EXTERN** (Import global section symbol)

## .IF/.ELIF/.ELSE/.ENDIF

### Syntax

```
.IF expression
.
.
[.ELIF expression]      (the .ELIF directive is optional)
.
.
[.ELSE]                  (the .ELSE directive is optional)
.
.
.ENDIF
```

### Description

With the .IF / .ENDIF directives you can create a part of conditional assembly code. The assembler assembles only the code that matches a specified condition.

The *expression* must evaluate to an integer and cannot contain forward references. If *expression* evaluates to zero, the IF-condition is considered FALSE, any non-zero result of *expression* is considered as TRUE.

You can nest .IF directives to any level. The .ELSE and .ELIF directive always refer to the nearest previous .IF directive.

### Example

Suppose you have an assemble source file with specific code for a test version, for a demo version and for the final version. Within the assembly source you define this code conditionally as follows:

```
.IF    TEST
... ; code for the test version
.ELIF DEMO
... ; code for the demo version
.ELSE
... ; code for the final version
.ENDIF
```

Before assembling the file you can set the values of the symbols TEST and DEMO in the assembly source before the .IF directive is reached. For example, to assemble the demo version:

```
TEST .SET 0
DEMO .SET 1
```

You can also define the symbols in Altium Designer as preprocessor macros in dialog **Project » Project Options » Assembler » Preprocessing** (assembler option **--define**).

### Related information



[Assembler option \*\*--define\*\* \(Define preprocessor macro\)](#) in Section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.

## .INCLUDE

### Syntax

```
.INCLUDE "filename" | <filename>
```

### Description

With the `.INCLUDE` directive you include another file at the exact location where the `.INCLUDE` occurs. This happens before the resulting file is assembled. The `.INCLUDE` directive works similarly to the `#include` statement in C. The source from the include file is assembled as if it followed the point of the `.INCLUDE` directive. When the end of the included file is reached, assembly of the original file continues.

The string specifies the filename of the file to be included. The filename must be compatible with the operating system (forward/backward slashes) and can contain a directory specification. If you omit a filename extension, the assembler assumes the extension `.asm`.

If an absolute pathname is specified, the assembler searches for that file. If a relative path is specified or just a filename, the order in which the assembler searches for include files is:

1. The current directory if you use the `"filename"` construction.  
The current directory is not searched if you use the `<filename>` syntax.
2. The path that is specified with the assembler option **--include-directory (-I)**.
3. The path that is specified in the environment variable `A$target\INC` when the product was installed.
4. The default directory `...\ctarget\include`.

### Example

Suppose that your assembly source file `test.src` contains the following line:

```
.INCLUDE "c:\myincludes\myinc.inc"
```

The assembler issues an error if it cannot find the file at the specified location.

```
.INCLUDE "myinc.inc"
```

The assembler searches the file `myinc.inc` according to the rules described above.

### Related information



[Assembler option \*\*--include-directory\*\* \(Add directory to include file search path\)](#) in Section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.

## **.LABEL**

### **Syntax**

*label* **.LABEL** *type*

### **Description**

With the **.LABEL** directive you define a *label* of a specified *type*.

Use this directive if the label that you define, must have another type than it receives by default. By default, a label inherits its type from the type of the section in which you define the label.

### **Example**

In the next example, the first label receives the type of the section. The second label is defined with the **.LABEL** directive and receives the type data.

```
                .SECTION code, code
mylabel1       .EQU 2
mylabel2       .LABEL data
```

## .LIST/.NOLIST

### Syntax

**.NOLIST**

. ; assembly source lines

**.LIST**

### Description

If you generate a list file (see assembler option **--list-file**), you can use the **.LIST** and **.NOLIST** directives to specify which source lines the assembler must write to the list file.

The assembler prints all source lines to the list file, until it encounters a **.NOLIST** directive. The assembler does not print the **.NOLIST** directive and subsequent source lines. When the assembler encounters the **.LIST** directive, it resumes printing to the list file, starting with the **.LIST** directive itself.

It is possible to nest the **.LIST/.NOLIST** directives.

### Example

Suppose you assemble the following assembly code with the assembler option **--list-file**:

```
.SECTION code, code
... ; source line 1
.NOLIST
... ; source line 2
.LIST
... ; source line 3
.END
```

The assembler generates a list file with the following lines:

```
.SECTION code, code
... ; source line 1
.LIST
... ; source line 3
.END
```

### Related information



[Assembler option \*\*--list-file\*\* \(Generate list file\)](#) in Section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.

## .MACRO/.ENDM

### Syntax

```
macro_name .MACRO [argument[,argument]...]
...
macro_definition_statements
...
.ENDM
```

### Description

With the `.MACRO` directive you define a macro. Macros provide a shorthand method for handling a repeated pattern of code or group of instructions. You can define the pattern as a macro, and then call the macro at the points in the program where the pattern would repeat.

The definition of a macro consists of three parts:

- *Header*, which assigns a name to the macro and defines the arguments.
- *Body*, which contains the code or instructions to be inserted when the macro is called.
- *Terminator*, which indicates the end of the macro definition (`.ENDM` directive).

The arguments are symbolic names that the macro processor replaces with the literal arguments when the macro is expanded (called). Each formal *argument* must follow the same rules as symbol names: the name can consist of letters, digits and underscore characters (`_`). The first character cannot be a digit. Argument names cannot start with a percent sign (%).

Macro definitions can be nested but the nested macro will not be defined until the primary macro is expanded.

You can use the following operators in macro definition statements:

Operator	Name	Description
\	Macro argument concatenation	Concatenates a macro argument with adjacent alphanumeric characters.
?	Return decimal value of symbol	Substitutes the <code>?symbol</code> sequence with a character string that represents the decimal value of the symbol.
%	Return hex value of symbol	Substitutes the <code>%symbol</code> sequence with a character string that represents the hexadecimal value of the symbol.
"	Macro string delimiter	Allows the use of macro arguments as literal strings.
^	Macro local label override	Prevents name mangling on labels in macros.

### Example

The macro definition:

```
macro_a .MACRO arg1,arg2                ;header
      .db arg1                          ;body
      .dw (arg1*arg2)
      .ENDM                             ;terminator
```

The macro call:

```
.section macro_data,data,init
macro_a 2,3
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
.db 2
.dw (2*3)
```

#### Related information



**.DEFINE** (Define a substitution string)  
Section 1.9, *Macro Operations*.



## .MESSAGE

### Syntax

**.MESSAGE** *type* [{*str|exp|symbol*}[, {*str|exp|symbol*}]...]

### Description

With the **.MESSAGE** directive you tell the assembler to print a message to `stdout` during the assembling process.

With *type* you can specify the following types of messages:

**I** Information message. Error and warning counts are not affected and the assembler continues the assembling process.

**W** Warning message. Increments the warning count and the assembler continues the assembling process.

**E** Error message. Increments the error count and the assembler continues the assembling process.

**F** Fatal error message. The assembler immediately aborts the assembling process and generates no object file or list file.

The **.MESSAGE** directive is for example useful in combination with conditional assembly to indicate which part is assembled.

### Example

```
.MESSAGE I 'Generating tables'

ID .EQU 4
.MESSAGE E 'The value of ID is ',ID

.DEFINE LONG "SHORT"
.MESSAGE I 'This is a LONG string'
.MESSAGE I "This is a LONG string"
```

Within single quotes, the defined symbol `LONG` is not expanded. Within double quotes the symbol `LONG` is expanded so the actual message is printed as:

```
This is a LONG string
This is a SHORT string
```

## .OFFSET

### Syntax

**.OFFSET** *expression*

### Description

With the `.OFFSET` directive you tell the assembler to give the location counter a new offset relative to the start of the section.

When the assembler encounters the `.OFFSET` directive, it moves the location counter forwards to the specified address, relative to the start of the section, and places the next instruction on that address. If you specify an address equal to or lower than the current position of the location counter, the assembler issues an error.

### Example

```
.SECTION code, code
nop
nop
nop
.OFFSET 0x20    ; the assembler places
nop            ; this instruction at address 0x20
               ; relative to the start of the section.

.SECTION code, code
nop
nop
nop
.OFFSET 0x02    ; WRONG: the current position of the
nop            ; location counter is 0x03.
```

## .PAGE

### Syntax

**.PAGE** [*width,length,blanktop,blankbtm,blankleft*]

### Description

If you generate a list file (see assembler option **--list-file**), you can use the **.PAGE** directive to format the generated list file.

*width*            Number of characters on a line (1–255). Default is 132.

*length*           Number of lines per page (10–255). Default is 66.

*blanktop*        Number of blank lines at the top of the page. Default = 0.  
Specify a value so that  $blanktop + blankbtm \leq length - 10$ .

*blankbtm*        Number of blank lines at the bottom of the page. Default = 0.  
Specify a value so that  $blanktop + blankbtm \leq length - 10$ .

*blankleft*        Number of blank columns at the left of the page. Default = 0. Specify a value smaller than *width*.

If you use the **.PAGE** directive without arguments, it causes a 'formfeed': the next source line is printed on the next page in the list file.

You can omit an argument by using two adjacent commas. If the remaining arguments after an argument are all empty, you can omit them.

A label is not allowed with this directive.

### Example

```
.PAGE      ; formfeed, the next source line is printed
           ; on the next page in the list file.

.PAGE 96   ; set pagewidth to 96. Note that you can
           ; omit the last four arguments

.PAGE ,,5  ; insert five blank lines at the top. Note
           ; that you can omit the last two arguments.
```

### Related information



**.TITLE** (Set program title in header of assembler list file)

Assembler option **--list-file** (Generate list file) in Section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.

## **.REPEAT/.ENDREP**

### **Syntax**

```
[label] .REPEAT expression  
....  
.ENDREP
```

### **Description**

With the `.REPEAT/.ENDREP` directive you can repeat a sequence of assembly source lines. With *expression* you specify the number of times the loop is repeated.

If you specify *label*, it gets the value of the location counter at the start of the directive processing.

### **Example**

In this example the loop is repeated 3 times. Effectively, the preprocessor repeats the source lines (`.DB 10`) three times, then the assembler assembles the result:

```
.REPEAT 3  
.DB 10 ; assembly source lines  
.ENDREP
```

### **Related information**



**.FOR/.ENDFOR** (Repeat sequence of source lines *n* times)

## .RESUME

### Syntax

```
.RESUME name [, type [, attribute]...]
```

### Description

With the `.SECTION` directive you always start a new section. With the `.RESUME` directive you can reactivate a previously defined section. See the `.SECTION` directive for a list of available section types and attributes. If you omit the type and attribute, the previously defined section with the same name is reactivated (ignoring the type and attribute(s)). If you specify a type and attribute you reactivate the section with that same type and attribute.

You cannot resume sections that have the group or overlay attribute. In this case the assembler issues a warning.

### Example

```
.SECTION code, code          ; First code section
...
.SECTION data, data          ; First data section
...
.SECTION code, code          ; Second code section
...
.SECTION data, data, init    ; Second data section
...
.RESUME code                  ; Resume in the second code section
...
.RESUME data, data           ; Resume in the first data section
...
.RESUME data, data, init     ; Resume in the second data section
```

### Related information



[.SECTION](#) (Start a new section)

## **.SECTION**

### **Syntax**

**.SECTION** *name*, *type*[, *attribute*]...

### **Description**

With the **.SECTION** directive you define a new section. Each time you use the **.SECTION** directive, a new section is created. It is possible to create multiple sections with exactly the same name.

To resume a previously defined section, use the **.RESUME** directive.

If you define a section, you must always specify the section *name* and *type*. Names starting with a dot '.' are reserved for the system. Optionally, you can specify one or more attributes.

You can specify the following section types:

Section Type	Description
data	Data space (4 banks of 32 bytes)
code	Code address space
bit	Bit addressable data (data space)

Table 1-3: TSK165x section types

Sections of a specified type are located by the linker in a memory space that has the same name as the section type. The space names are defined in a so-called 'linker script file' (files with the extension **.lsl**) delivered with the product in the directory **\Program Files\Altium Designer\System\Tasking \include.lsl**.

You can specify the following section attributes:

Attribute	Description	Allowed on
at( <i>address</i> )	Locate the section at the specified address	all
clear	Clear the DATA section at program startup	data, bit
noclear	Do not clear the DATA section at program startup (default)	all
init	Copies the data from the section from ROM to RAM at program setup.	data, bit
noinit	Do not initialize section (default)	all
inpage	Indicates that the section must fit within a 256 byte page.	all
max	When sections with the same name occur in different object modules, with the MAX attribute, the linker generates a section of which the size is the maximum of the sizes in the individual object modules.	data, bit
romdata	Indicates that the section contains data to be placed in ROM	code
group( <i>'group'</i> )	Used to group sections, for example for placing in the same page.	all

Table 1-4: TSK165x section attributes

### **Example**

```
.SECTION data, data, init      ; Declare section of type 'data' and
                                ; initialize it by copying
                                ; its data from ROM

.SECTION data, data, clear     ; Declare a data section,
                                ; cleared at program startup

.SECTION data, data, init      ; Declare a second data init section
```



**.RESUME** (Resume a previously defined section)

## .SET

### Syntax

```
symbol .SET expression  
      .SET symbol expression
```

### Description

With the `.SET` directive you assign the value of *expression* to *symbol* temporarily. If a symbol was defined with the `.SET` directive, you can redefine that symbol in another part of the assembly source, using the `.SET` directive again. Symbols that you define with the `.SET` directive are always local: you cannot define the symbol global with the `.GLOBAL` directive.

The `.SET` directive is useful in establishing temporary or reusable counters within macros. *expression* must be absolute and cannot include a symbol that is not yet defined (no forward references are allowed).

Normally, the defined symbol gets the same type as the result of the expression. However, when the resulting expression has type "none", the symbol gets no type.

### Example

```
COUNT .SET 0 ; Initialize count. Later on you can  
      ; assign other values to the symbol
```

### Related information



[.EQU](#) (Set a permanent value to a symbol)

## **.TITLE**

### **Syntax**

**.TITLE** [*title*]

### **Description**

If you generate a list file (see assembler option **--list-file**), you can use the **.TITLE** directive to specify the program title which is printed at the top of each page in the assembler list file.

If you use the **.TITLE** directive without the argument, the title becomes empty. This is also the default. The specified title is valid until the assembler encounters a new **.TITLE** directive.

### **Example**

```
.TITLE "The best program"
```

In the header of each page in the assembler list file, the title of the program is printed. In this case: `The best program`

### **Related information**



**.PAGE** (Format the assembler list file)

Assembler option **--list-file** (Generate list file) in Section 2.1, *Assembler Options*, of Chapter *Tool Options*.



## **.UNDEF**

### **Syntax**

**.UNDEF** *symbol*

### **Description**

With the **.UNDEF** directive you can undefine a substitution string that was previously defined with the **.DEFINE** directive. The substitution string associated with *symbol* is released, and *symbol* will no longer represent a valid **.DEFINE** substitution.

The assembler issues a warning if you redefine an existing symbol.

### **Example**

```
.UNDEF LEN
```

Undefines the **LEN** substitution string that was previously defined with the **.DEFINE** directive.

### **Related information**



**.DEFINE** (Define substitution string)

## **.WEAK**

### **Syntax**

**.WEAK** *symbol*[,*symbol*]...

### **Description**

With the **.WEAK** directive you mark one or more symbols as 'weak'. The *symbol* can be defined in the same module with the **.GLOBAL** directive or the **.EXTERN** directive. If the symbol does not already exist, it will be created.

A 'weak' external reference is resolved by the linker when a global (or weak) definition is found in one of the object files. However, a weak reference will not cause the extraction of a module from a library to resolve the reference.

You can overrule a weak definition with a **.GLOBAL** definition in another module. The linker will not complain about the duplicate definition, and ignore the weak definition.

Only program labels and symbols defined with **.EQU** can be made weak.

### **Example**

```
LOOPA .EQU 1          ; definition of symbol LOOPA
      .GLOBAL LOOPA   ; LOOPA will be globally
                      ; accessible by other modules
      .WEAK LOOPA     ; mark symbol LOOPA as weak
```

### **Related information**



**.EXTERN** (Import global section symbol)

**.GLOBAL** (Declare global section symbol)

## 1.9 Macro Operations

Macros provide a shorthand method for inserting a repeated pattern of code or group of instructions. You can define the pattern as a macro, and then call the macro at the points in the program where the pattern would repeat.

Some patterns contain variable entries which change for each repetition of the pattern. Others are subject to conditional assembly.

When a macro is called, the assembler executes the macro and replaces the call by the resulting in-line source statements. 'In-line' means that all replacements act as if they are on the same line as the macro call. The generated statements may contain substitutable arguments. The statements produced by a macro can be any processor instruction, almost any assembler directive, or any previously-defined macro. Source statements resulting from a macro call are subject to the same conditions and restrictions as any other statements.

Macros can be *nested*. The assembler processes nested macros when the outer macro is expanded.

### 1.9.1 Defining a Macro

The first step in using a macro is to define it.

The definition of a macro consists of three parts:

- *Header*, which assigns a name to the macro and defines the arguments.
- *Body*, which contains the code or instructions to be inserted when the macro is called.
- *Terminator*, which indicates the end of the macro definition (`.ENDM` directive).

A macro definition takes the following form:

```
macro_name .MACRO [arg[,arg]...] [: comment]
.
source statements
.
.ENDM
```

If the macro name is the same as an existing assembler directive or mnemonic opcode, the assembler replaces the directive or mnemonic opcode with the macro and issues a warning.

The arguments are symbolic names that the macro preprocessor replaces with the literal arguments when the macro is expanded (called). Each argument must follow the same rules as global symbol names. Argument names cannot start with a percent sign (%).

#### Example

Consider the following macro definition:

```
MUL .MACRO retval, arg1, arg2
    CLRW                ; w = 0;
    MOVF arg2,0
    BTFSC Z
    goto ^end           ; if (arg2)
^loop:                  ; do {
    ADDWF arg1,0         ; w += arg1;
    BTFSC C              ; if (carry)
    INCF retval,1        ; res += 0x100;
    DECFSZ arg2,1        ; } while (arg2--);
    goto ^loop
^end:
    MOVWF (retval + 1) ; res += w;
.ENDM
```

After the following macro call:

```
result .dsw 1
aval   .db 113
bval   .db 7
        .section code, code
        MUL result, aval, bval
        .end
```

The macro expands to:

```
        CLRW                ; w = 0;
        MOVF bval,0
        BTFSC Z
        goto end            ; if (bval)

loop:
        ADDWF aval,0        ; w += aval;
        BTFSC C             ; if (carry)
        INCF result,1       ; res += 0x100;
        DECFSZ bval,1       ; } while (bval--);
        goto loop

end:
        MOVWF (result + 1) ; res += w;
```

## 1.9.2 Calling a Macro

To invoke a macro, construct a source statement with the following format:

```
[label] macro_name [arg[,arg...]]           [; comment]
```

where:

**label** An optional label that corresponds to the value of the location counter at the start of the macro expansion.

**macro\_name** The name of the macro. This may not start in the first column.

**arg** One or more optional, substitutable arguments. Multiple arguments must be separated by commas.

**comment** An optional comment.

The following applies to macro arguments:

- Each argument must correspond one-to-one with the formal arguments of the macro definition. If the macro call does not contain the same number of arguments as the macro definition, the assembler issues a warning.
- If an argument has an embedded comma or space, you must surround the argument by single quotes (').
- You can declare a macro call argument as null in three ways:
  - enter delimiting commas in succession with no intervening spaces  
macroname ARG1,,ARG3 ; the second argument is a null argument
  - terminate the argument list with a comma, the arguments that normally would follow, are now considered null  
macroname ARG1, ; the second and all following arguments are null
  - declare the argument as a null string
- No character is substituted in the generated statements that reference a null argument.

### 1.9.3 Using Operators for Macro Arguments

The assembler recognizes certain text operators within macro definitions which allow text substitution of arguments during macro expansion. You can use these operators for text concatenation, numeric conversion, and string handling.

Operator	Name	Description
\	Macro argument concatenation	Concatenates a macro argument with adjacent alphanumeric characters.
?	Return decimal value of symbol	Substitutes the <i>?symbol</i> sequence with a character string that represents the decimal value of the symbol.
%	Return hex value of symbol	Substitutes the <i>%symbol</i> sequence with a character string that represents the hexadecimal value of the symbol.
"	Macro string delimiter	Allows the use of macro arguments as literal strings.
^	Macro local label override	Prevents name mangling on labels in macros.

#### Example: Argument Concatenation Operator – \

Consider the following macro definition:

```
MAC_A .MACRO reg,val
    bmov RB\reg,val
.ENDM
```

The macro is called as follows:

```
MAC_A 0,1
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
bmov RB0,1
```

The macro preprocessor substitutes the character '0' for the argument *reg*, and the character '1' for the argument *val*. The concatenation operator (\) indicates to the macro preprocessor that the substitution characters for the arguments are to be concatenated with the characters 'RB'.

Without the '\' operator the macro would expand as:

```
bmov RBreg,1
```

which results in an assembler error (invalid operand).

#### Example: Decimal Value Operator – ?

Instead of substituting the formal arguments with the actual macro call arguments, you can also use the *value* of the macro call arguments.

Consider the following source code that calls the macro *MAC\_A* after the argument *AVAL* has been set to 1.

```
AVAL .SET 1
MAC_A 0,AVAL
```

If you want to replace the argument *val* with the value of *AVAL* rather than with the literal string 'AVAL', you can use the *?* operator and modify the macro as follows:

```
MAC_A .MACRO reg,val
    bmov RB\reg,?val
.ENDM
```

### **Example: Hex Value Operator – %**

The percent sign (%) is similar to the standard decimal value operator (?) except that it returns the hexadecimal value of a symbol.

Consider the following macro definition:

```
GEN_LABEL    .MACRO   LAB,VAL,STMT
LAB\%VAL     STMT
              .ENDM
```

The macro is called after NUM has been set to 10:

```
NUM .SET      10
    GEN_LABEL  HEX,NUM,NOP
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
HEXA NOP
```

The %VAL argument is replaced by the character 'A' which represents the hexadecimal value 10 of the argument VAL.

### **Example: Argument String Operator – ”**

To generate a literal string, enclosed by single quotes ('), you must use the argument string operator (”) in the macro definition.

Consider the following macro definition:

```
STR_MAC      .MACRO   STRING
              .DB      ”STRING”
              .ENDM
```

The macro is called as follows:

```
STR_MAC ABCD
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
.DB      'ABCD'
```

Within double quotes .DEFINE directive definitions can be expanded. Take care when using constructions with quotes and double quotes to avoid inappropriate expansions. Since .DEFINE expansion occurs before macro substitution, any .DEFINE symbols are replaced first within a macro argument string:

```
.DEFINE LONG 'short'
STR_MAC      .MACRO   STRING
              .MESSAGE I 'This is a LONG STRING'
              .MESSAGE I ”This is a LONG STRING”
              .ENDM
```

If the macro is called as follows:

```
STR_MAC sentence
```

it expands as:

```
.MESSAGE I 'This is a LONG STRING'
.MESSAGE I 'This is a short sentence'
```

### **Macro Local Label Override Operator – ^**

If you use labels in macros, the assembler normally generates another unique name for the labels (such as LOCAL\_\_M\_L000001).

The macro ^-operator prevents name mangling on macro local labels.

Consider the following macro definition:

```
INIT .MACRO  addr
LOCAL: movwf ^addr
      .ENDM
```

The macro is called as follows:

```
LOCAL:  
    INIT LOCAL
```

The macro expands as:

```
LOCAL__M_L000001: movwf LOCAL
```

If you would not have used the ^ operator, the macro preprocessor would choose another name for `LOCAL` because the label already exists. The macro would expand like:

```
LOCAL__M_L000001: movwf LOCAL__M_L000001
```

### 1.9.4 Using the .FOR and .REPEAT Directives as Macros

The `.FOR` and `.REPEAT` directives are specialized macro forms to repeat a block of source statements. You can think of them as a simultaneous definition and call of an unnamed macro. The source statements between the `.FOR` and `.ENDFOR` directives and `.REPEAT` and `.ENDREP` directives follow the same rules as macro definitions.



For a detailed description of these directives, see section 1.8, [Assembler Directives](#).

### 1.9.5 Conditional Assembly

With the conditional assembly directives you can instruct the macro preprocessor to use a part of the code that matches a certain condition.

You can specify assembly conditions with arguments in the case of macros, or through definition of symbols via the `.DEFINE`, `.SET`, and `.EQU` directives.

The built-in functions of the assembler provide a versatile means of testing many conditions of the assembly environment.

You can use conditional directives also within a macro definition to check at expansion time if arguments fall within a range of allowable values. In this way macros become self-checking and can generate error messages to any desired level of detail.

The conditional assembly directive `.IF/.ENDIF` has the following form:

```
.IF expression  
.  
.  
[.ELIF expression]      ;(the .ELIF directive is optional)  
.  
.  
[.ELSE]                ;(the .ELSE directive is optional)  
.  
.  
.ENDIF
```

A section of a program that is to be conditionally assembled must be bounded by an `.IF-.ENDIF` directive pair. If the optional `.ELSE` and/or `.ELIF` directives are not present, then the source statements following the `.IF` directive and up to the next `.ENDIF` directive will be included as part of the source file being assembled only if the *expression* had a non-zero result.

If the *expression* has a value of zero, the source file will be assembled as if those statements between the `.IF` and the `.ENDIF` directives were never encountered.

If the `.ELSE` directive is present and *expression* has a nonzero result, then the statements between the `.IF` and `.ELSE` directives will be assembled, and the statement between the `.ELSE` and `.ENDIF` directives will be skipped. Alternatively, if *expression* has a value of zero, then the statements between the `.IF` and `.ELSE` directives will be skipped, and the statements between the `.ELSE` and `.ENDIF` directives will be assembled.

## 1.10 Structured Control Statements

The assembly language provides an instruction set for performing certain rudimentary operations. These operations in turn may be combined into control structures such as loops (FOR, REPEAT, WHILE) or conditional branches (IF-THEN, IF-THEN-ELSE). The TSK165x assembler, however, accepts formal, high-level `.GEN` directives that specify these control structures, generating the appropriate assembly language instructions for their efficient implementation. This use of structured control statements improves the readability of assembly language programs, without compromising the desirable aspects of programming in an assembly language.

The TSK165x assembler supports the following types of structured control statements by means of the `.GEN` directive:

- [For statement](#)
- [While statement](#)
- [Repeat statement](#)
- [If statement](#)
- [Switch statement](#)

If an assembler directive occurs within a structured control statement, this is evaluated only once: at assembly time. So, an assembler directive in a FOR, WHILE or REPEAT statement does not imply repeated occurrence of the directive.



See the description of the `.GEN` directive in section 1.8, [Assembler Directives](#).

### 1.10.1 FOR Statement

#### Syntax

```
.GEN FOR var = start {DOWNTO|TO} end [BY step]  
[.GEN BREAK]  
[.GEN CONTINUE]  
statements  
.GEN ENDFOR
```

#### Registers/flags affected

W, C, Z, PA1, PA0

#### Description

With the FOR statement the assembler initializes *var* to *start* and performs the assembly *statements* until *var* is greater (**TO**) or less than (**DOWNTO**) *end*. The user-defined operand *var* serves as the loop counter. The **TO** construct counts upwards and the **DOWNTO** construct counts downwards. You can specify an increment/decrement step size by *step*. If you omit the **BY** clause the default step size is #1.

*var* must be a writable address or symbol. *start*, *end* and *step* can be an address, symbol or immediate value. An immediate operand must be preceded by a pound sign (#). Each address or symbol must be accessible in the current data page.

You can use the BREAK and/or CONTINUE statements inside a FOR statement.



If an assembler directive occurs within a structured control statement, this is evaluated only once: at assembly time. So, an assembler directive in a FOR, WHILE or REPEAT statement does not imply repeated occurrence of the directive.

#### Example 1: Count upwards with step size

```
.SECTION data, data  
idx: .DSB 1  
.SECTION code, code  
.GEN FOR idx = #0 TO #128 BY #5  
    NOP ; Just do nothing...  
.GEN ENDFOR
```



Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN FOR idx = #0 TO #128 BY #5
+          MOVLW #0
+          MOVWF idx
+__T121: CJGE idx,#128, __T122

          NOP ; Just do nothing...

;          .GEN ENDFOR
+          MOVLW #5
+          ADDWF idx,f
+          GOTO __T121
+__T122:
```

#### Example 2: Count downwards

```
          .SECTION data, data
idx:      .DSB 1
          .SECTION code, code
          .GEN FOR idx = #255 DOWNT0 #128
            NOP ; Just do nothing...
          .GEN ENDFOR
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN FOR idx = #255 DOWNT0 #128
+          MOVLW #255
+          MOVWF idx
+__T123: CJLE idx,#128, __T124

          NOP ; Just do nothing...

;          .GEN ENDFOR
+          DECWF idx,f
+          GOTO __T123
+__T124:
```

#### Related information



**BREAK** Statement  
**CONTINUE** Statement  
**REPEAT** Statement  
**WHILE** Statement  
**.FOR/.ENDFOR** (Repeat sequence of source lines *n* times)

### 1.10.2 WHILE Statement

#### Syntax

```
.GEN WHILE expression
[.GEN BREAK]
[.GEN CONTINUE]
statements
.GEN ENDWHILE
```

#### Registers/flags affected

W, C, Z, PA1, PA0

## Description

The *expression* is tested before execution of the assembly *statements*. While *expression* is true the statements are executed repeatedly. When *expression* evaluates to false, execution advances to the instruction following the **ENDWHILE**.

*expression* must be a valid structured control expression.

You can use the BREAK and/or CONTINUE statements inside a WHILE statement.



If an assembler directive occurs within a structured control statement, this is evaluated only once: at assembly time. So, an assembler directive in a FOR, WHILE or REPEAT statement does not imply repeated occurrence of the directive.

## Example 1: While not equal

```
.SECTION code, code
.GEN WHILE <NOT> T0
    NOP ; Just do nothing...
.GEN ENDWHILE
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN WHILE <NOT> T0
+__T125: BTFSC T0
+          GOTO __T126

          NOP ; Just do nothing...

;          .GEN ENDWHILE
+          GOTO __T125
+__T126:
```

## Example 2: While less than or equal

```
.SECTION data, data
i      .DSB 1
       .SECTION code, code
       .GEN WHILE i <LE> #127
           call DoSomething
       .GEN ENDFOR
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN WHILE i <LE> #127
+__T127 MOVLW #(~127)
+          ADDWF i,W
+          BTFSC C
+          GOTO __T128

          call DoSomething

;          .GEN ENDWHILE
+          GOTO __T127
+__T128:
```

## Related information



Section 1.10.8, [Structured Control Expressions](#)

[BREAK Statement](#)

[CONTINUE Statement](#)

[FOR Statement](#)

[REPEAT Statement](#)

### 1.10.3 REPEAT Statement

#### Syntax

```
.GEN REPEAT  
[.GEN BREAK]  
[.GEN CONTINUE]  
    statements  
.GEN UNTIL expression
```

#### Registers/flags affected

W, C, Z, PA1, PA0

#### Description

The assembly *statements* are executed repeatedly until *expression* is true. When *expression* evaluates to true, execution advances to the instruction following the **UNTIL**. The difference with a WHILE statement is that the assembly *statements* are executed at least once, even if *expression* is true upon entry of the REPEAT loop.

*expression* must be a valid structured control expression.

You can use the BREAK and/or CONTINUE statements inside a REPEAT statement.



If an assembler directive occurs within a structured control statement, this is evaluated only once: at assembly time. So, an assembler directive in a FOR, WHILE or REPEAT statement does not imply repeated occurrence of the directive.

#### Example

```
        .SECTION data,data  
i        .DSB 1  
j        .DSB 1  
        .SECTION code, code  
        .GEN REPEAT  
        call DoSomething  
        .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;        .GEN REPEAT  
+__T129:        call DoSomething  
  
;        .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j  
+__T130: MOVF j,W  
+        SUBWF i,W  
+        BTFSC C  
+        GOTO __T129  
+__T131:
```

#### Related information



Section 1.10.8, [Structured Control Expressions](#)

[BREAK Statement](#)

[CONTINUE Statement](#)

[FOR Statement](#)

[WHILE Statement](#)

[.REPEAT/.ENDREP](#) (Repeat sequence of source lines)

## 1.10.4 IF Statement

### Syntax

```
.GEN IF expression
    statements
[.GEN ELIF expression
    statements]
[.GEN ELSE
    statements]
.GEN ENDIF
```

### Registers/flags affected

W, C, Z, PA1, PA0

### Description

If the *expression* after the **IF** statement is true, execute the assembly *statements* following the **IF** statement. If the *expression* evaluates to false, the *expression* after the **ELIF** is tested. If the *expression* after the **ELIF** is true the following assembly *statements* are executed otherwise the *statements* after the **ELSE** are executed. If the **ELSE** is not present execution advances to the instruction following the **ENDIF**.

*expression* must be a valid structured control expression.

You can nest IF statements. The ELIF and ELSE refer to the most recent IF.

### Example

```
        .SECTION data,data
i        .DSB 1
j        .DSB 1
        .SECTION code, code
        .GEN IF i <LT> j
            MOVW i,W
            call func_a
        .GEN ELIF i <EQ> j
            call func_b
        .GEN ELSE
            MOVW j,W
            call func_a
        .GEN ENDIF
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN IF i <LT> j
+          MOVF j,W
+          SUBWF i,W
+          BTFSC C
+          GOTO __T132

          MOVW i,W
          call func_a

;          .GEN ELIF i <EQ> j
+          GOTO __T134
+__T132: MOVF j,W
+          SUBWF i,W
+          BTFSC Z
+          GOTO __T133

          call func_b

;          .GEN ELSE
+          GOTO __T134
+__T133:

          MOVW j,W
          call func_a

;          .GEN ENDIF
+__T134:
```

#### Related information



Section 1.10.8, *Structured Control Expressions*

### 1.10.5 SWITCH Statement

#### Syntax

```
.GEN SWITCH var
.GEN CASE match1
    statements
[.GEN CASE match2
    statements]
[.GEN DEFAULT
    statements]
[.GEN BREAK]
.GEN ENDSWITCH
```

#### Registers/flags affected

W, Z, PA1, PA0

## Description

With the SWITCH statement you can use a C like switch implementation in assembly. If the value of *var* is equal to *match* the assembly *statements* after the corresponding **CASE** statement are executed. If the value does not match, the assembler skips the statements and tests *var* against the next **CASE** statement. If there is no matching **CASE** statement at all, execution advances to the instruction following the **DEFAULT** statement. If there is no **DEFAULT** and none of the other cases matches, no action takes place.

You can use multiple **CASE** statements for a single action. Because cases are like labels, after one case is done, execution *falls through* to the next case unless you use the **BREAK** statement to escape the switch and advance execution after the **ENDSWITCH**.

*var* must be an address or symbol. *match* can be an address, symbol or immediate value. An immediate operand must be preceded by a pound sign (#). Each address or symbol must be accessible in the current data page.

## Example

```
.SECTION data,data
i      .DSB 1

      .SECTION code, code
      .GEN SWITCH i

      .GEN CASE #0
        call func_0
      .GEN BREAK

      .GEN CASE #1 ; fall through
      .GEN CASE #2
        call func_2
      .GEN BREAK

      .GEN DEFAULT
        call func_def
      .GEN ENSWITCH
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;      .GEN SWITCH i
;      .GEN CASE #0
+__T135: MOVLW #0
+      SUBWF i,W
+      BTFSC Z
+      GOTO __T137
+__T136:
        call func_0
;      .GEN BREAK
+      GOTO __T142
;      .GEN CASE #1 ; fall through
+__T137: MOVLW #1
+      SUBWF i,W
+      BTFSC Z
+      GOTO __T139
;      .GEN CASE #2
+      GOTO __T140
+__T139: MOVLW #2
+      SUBWF i,W
+      BTFSC Z
+      GOTO __T141
```

```
+__T140:
    call func_2
;      .GEN BREAK
+      GOTO __T142
;      .GEN DEFAULT
+__T141:
    call func_def
;      .GEN ENDSWITCH
+__T142:
```

#### Related information



[BREAK Statement](#)

### 1.10.6 BREAK Statement

#### Syntax

```
.GEN BREAK
```

#### Registers/flags affected

PA1, PA0

#### Description

The BREAK statement causes an immediate exit from the innermost enclosing loop construct (WHILE, REPEAT, FOR) or SWITCH statement. The BREAK statement has no effect on an IF statement, the assembler will search for the most inner valid statement.

#### Example 1: Exit from WHILE statement

```
    .SECTION data, data
i    .DSB 1
    .SECTION code, code
    .GEN WHILE <NOT> T0
    ...
    .GEN IF i <EQ> #5
    .GEN BREAK ; exit from WHILE loop
    .GEN ENDIF
    ...
    .GEN ENDWHILE
; execution resumes here after the BREAK
```

#### Example 2: Exit from REPEAT statement

```
    .SECTION data, data
i    .DSB 1
j    .DSB 1
    .SECTION code, code
    .GEN REPEAT
    call DoSomething
    cjnz W, skip ; if return value is not zero
    .GEN BREAK
skip:
    call Whatever
    .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j

; execution resumes here after the BREAK
```

Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN REPEAT
+__T129:
    call DoSomething
    cjnz W, skip ; if return value is not zero
;          .GEN BREAK
+          GOTO __T131
skip:
    call Whatever
;          .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j
+__T130: MOVF j,W
+          SUBWF i,W
+          BTFSC C
+          GOTO __T129
+__T131:
```

#### Related information



- [FOR Statement](#)
- [WHILE Statement](#)
- [REPEAT Statement](#)
- [SWITCH Statement](#)

### 1.10.7 CONTINUE Statement

#### Syntax

**.GEN CONTINUE**

#### Registers/flags affected

PA1, PA0

#### Description

The CONTINUE statement causes the next iteration of the innermost enclosing loop construct (WHILE, REPEAT, FOR) to begin. This means that the loop expression or operand comparison is performed immediately, bypassing any subsequent instructions.

The CONTINUE statement has no effect on an IF statement, the assembler will search for the most inner valid statement.

#### Example

```
          .SECTION data, data
i          .DSB 1
j          .DSB 1
          .SECTION code, code
          .GEN REPEAT
            call DoSomething
            cjnz W, skip ; if return value is not zero
          .GEN CONTINUE ; immediately jump to UNTIL
skip:
            call Whatever
          .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j
```



Generated TSK165x code:

```
;          .GEN REPEAT
+__T129:
    call DoSomething
    cjnz W, skip ; if return value is not zero
;          .GEN CONTINUE ; immediately jump to UNTIL
+          GOTO __T130
skip:
    call Whatever
;          .GEN UNTIL i <GT> j
+__T130: MOVF j,W
+          SUBWF i,W
+          BTFSC C
+          GOTO __T129
+__T131:
```

#### Related information



[FOR Statement](#)  
[WHILE Statement](#)  
[REPEAT Statement](#)

### 1.10.8 Structured Control Expressions

The WHILE, REPEAT and IF structured control statements accept so-called *structured control expressions*. Unlike normal assembly expressions they always evaluate to a TRUE or FALSE condition and they have a special syntax.

You can use the following structured control expressions:

Expression	Description
<i>var</i>	Evaluates to TRUE if <i>var</i> does not equal zero
<NOT> <i>var</i>	Evaluates to TRUE if <i>var</i> equals zero
<i>var</i> <EQ> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is equal to <i>expr</i>
<i>var</i> <GE> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is greater than or equal to <i>expr</i>
<i>var</i> <GT> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is greater than to <i>expr</i>
<i>var</i> <LE> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is less than or equal to <i>expr</i>
<i>var</i> <LT> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is less than to <i>expr</i>
<i>var</i> <NE> <i>expr</i>	Test if <i>var</i> is not equal to <i>expr</i>

*var* must be an address or symbol. *expr* can be an address, symbol or immediate value. An immediate operand must be preceded by a pound sign (#). Each address or symbol must be accessible in the current data page.

#### Related information



[WHILE Statement](#)  
[REPEAT Statement](#)  
[IF Statement](#)

## 1.11 Generic Instructions

The assembler supports so-called 'generic instructions'. Generic instructions are pseudo instructions (no instructions from the instruction set). Depending on the situation in which a generic instruction is used, the assembler replaces the generic instruction with appropriate real assembly instruction(s).

The TSK165x assembler recognizes three types of pseudo instructions:

- One-to-one replacement: A pseudo instruction is used as a shorthand notation, a simplified syntax notation. The assembler recognizes the shorthand notation and replaces it with the real assembly instruction.
- One-to-multiple replacement: A pseudo instruction is used as a mini routine. The assembler recognizes the pseudo instruction and replaces it with multiple assembly instructions that perform the task.
- Conditional replacement: A pseudo instruction can be a generic instruction. Depending on the context in which the generic instruction is used, the assembler chooses the most appropriate real assembly instruction.

### Single instruction generics

Instruction	Replacement
DEC <i>regf</i>	DECF <i>regf</i> , f
COM <i>regf</i>	COMF <i>regf</i> , f
INC <i>regf</i>	INCF <i>regf</i> , f
DECSZ <i>regf</i>	DECFSZ <i>regf</i> , f
INCSZ <i>regf</i>	INCFSZ <i>regf</i> , f
AND W,# <i>imm8</i>	ANDLW # <i>imm8</i>
IOR W,# <i>imm8</i>	IORLW # <i>imm8</i>
XOR W,# <i>imm8</i>	XORLW # <i>imm8</i>
MOV W,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i>
MOV W, <i>regf</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> , W
MOV <i>regf</i> ,W	MOVWF <i>regf</i>

### One-to-Multiple instruction generics

Instruction	Description of multiple replacement
BMOV <i>bitaddr</i> ,# <i>imm1</i>	if <i>imm1</i> equals zero => BCF <i>bitaddr</i> if <i>imm1</i> not equal zero => BSF <i>bitaddr</i> ; move "imm1" to <i>bitaddr</i>
LJMP <i>label</i>	JMP to full 11-bit address range
LCALL <i>label</i>	CALL to any address within lower half of any code page
JZ <i>goto_label</i>	if Z set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
JNZ <i>goto_label</i>	if Z not set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
JC <i>goto_label</i>	if C set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
JNC <i>goto_label</i>	if C not set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
JB <i>bitaddr</i> , <i>goto_label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
JNB <i>bitaddr</i> , <i>goto_label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> not set => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
DJNZ <i>regf</i> , <i>goto_label</i>	decrements <i>regf</i> , if <i>regf</i> not zero => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
IJNZ <i>regf</i> , <i>goto_label</i>	increments <i>regf</i> , if <i>regf</i> not zero => GOTO <i>goto_label</i>
CALL <i>label</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> CALL <i>label</i> ; mov <i>imm8</i> in W and CALL <i>label</i>
CALL <i>label</i> , <i>regf</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W CALL <i>label</i> ; mov <i>regf</i> in W and CALL <i>label</i>
ADD <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> ADDWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; add <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
ADD <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf1</i> ,W ADDWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; add <i>regf1</i> to <i>regf2</i>

Instruction	Description of multiple replacement
SUB <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> SUBWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; subtract <i>imm8</i> from <i>regf2</i>
SUB <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W SUBWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; subtract <i>regf1</i> from <i>regf2</i>
AND <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> ANDWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; AND <i>regf2</i> and <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
AND <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W ANDWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; AND <i>regf2</i> and <i>regf1</i> to <i>regf2</i>
IOR <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> IORWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; IOR <i>regf2</i> and <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
IOR <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W IORWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; IOR <i>regf2</i> and <i>regf1</i> to <i>regf2</i>
XOR <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> XORWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; XOR <i>regf2</i> and <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
XOR <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W XORWF <i>regf2</i> ,f ; XOR <i>regf2</i> and <i>regf1</i> to <i>regf2</i>
MOV <i>regf2</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> MOVWF <i>regf2</i> ; move <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
MOV <i>regf2</i> , <i>regf1</i>	MOVF <i>regf</i> ,W MOVWF <i>regf2</i> ; move <i>regf1</i> to <i>regf2</i>
TRIS <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i>	MOVLW # <i>imm8</i> TRIS <i>regf</i> ; tris <i>imm8</i> to <i>regf2</i>
<b>Compare and skip on condition</b>	
CSE <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> == # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSE <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> == <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSNE <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> != # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSNE <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> != <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSL <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> < # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSL <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> < <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSLE <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> <= # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSLE <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> <= <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSG <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> > # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSG <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> > <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSGE <i>regf</i> ,# <i>imm8</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> >= # <i>imm8</i> => skip next instruction
CSGE <i>regf1</i> , <i>regf2</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf1</i> >= <i>regf2</i> => skip next instruction
CSNZ W,goto_label	if W not zero => skip next instruction
CSNZ <i>regf</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> not zero => skip next instruction
CSNZ <i>bitaddr</i> ,goto_label	if <i>bitaddr</i> not zero => skip next instruction
CSZ W,goto_label	if W is zero => skip next instruction
CSZ <i>regf</i> ,goto_label	if <i>regf</i> is zero => skip next instruction
CSZ <i>bitaddr</i> ,goto_label	if <i>bitaddr</i> is zero => skip next instruction

### Conditional instruction generics

Instruction	Description of replacement
GJMP	generic jump: chooses GOTO or LJMP
GCALL	generic call: chooses CALL or LCALL
GJZ <i>label</i>	if Z set = GJMP <i>label</i>
GJNZ <i>label</i>	if Z not set = GJMP <i>label</i>

Instruction	Description of replacement
GJC <i>label</i>	if C set = GJMP <i>label</i>
GJNC <i>label</i>	if C not set = GJMP <i>label</i>
GJB <i>bitaddr,label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> set = GJMP <i>label</i>
GJNB <i>bitaddr,label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> not set = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJE <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> == <i>#imm8</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJNE <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> != <i>#imm8</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJL <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> # <i>imm8</i> => GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJLE <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> <= <i>#imm8</i> => GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJG <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> <i>#imm8</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJGE <i>regf,#imm8,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> = <i>#imm8</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJE <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> == <i>regf2</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJNE <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> != <i>regf2</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJL <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> <i>regf2</i> => GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJLE <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> <= <i>regf2</i> => GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJG <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> <i>regf2</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJGE <i>regf1,regf2,label</i>	if <i>regf1</i> = <i>regf2</i> = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJNZ W, <i>label</i>	if W not zero = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJNZ <i>regf,label</i>	if W is zero = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJNZ <i>bitaddr,label</i>	if <i>regf</i> not zero = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJZ W, <i>label</i>	if <i>regf</i> is zero = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJZ <i>regf,label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> not zero = GJMP <i>label</i>
GCJZ <i>bitaddr,label</i>	if <i>bitaddr</i> is zero = GJMP <i>label</i>



## 2 Tool Options

### Summary

This chapter provides a detailed description of the options for the assembler, linker, control program, make program and the librarian.

### 2.1 Assembler Options

Altium Designer uses a makefile to build your entire project. This means that in Altium Designer you cannot run the assembler separately. However, you can set options specific for the assembler.

#### ***Options in Altium Designer versus options on the command line***

Most command line options have an equivalent option in Altium Designer but some options are only available on the command line (for example in a Windows Command Prompt). If there is no equivalent option in Altium Designer, you can specify a command line option in Altium Designer as follows:

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Enter one or more command line options in the **Additional assembler options** field.

#### ***Invocation syntax on the command line (Windows Command Prompt)***

To call the assembler from the command line, use the following syntax:

```
as165x [ [option]... [file]... ]...
```

The input *file* must be an assembly source file (.asm or .src).

### **Short and long option names**

Options can have both short and long names. Short option names always begin with a single minus (–) character, long option names always begin with double minus (––) characters. You can abbreviate long option names as long as the name is unique. You can mix short and long option names on the command line.

Options can have flags or sub-options. To switch a flag 'on', use a lowercase letter or a *+longflag*. To switch a flag off, use an uppercase letter or a *–longflag*. Separate *longflags* with commas. The following two invocations are equivalent:

```
as165x -Ogs test.src
```

```
as165x --optimize=+generics,+instr-size test.src
```

When you do not specify an option, a default value may become active.

## Assembler: --case-insensitive (-c)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Disable the option **Assemble case sensitive**.

### Command line syntax

--case-insensitive  
-c

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler not to distinguish between upper and lower case characters. By default the assembler considers upper and lower case characters as different characters.



Disabling the option **Assemble case sensitive** in Altium Designer is the same as specifying the option **--case-insensitive** on the command line.

### Example

When assembling case insensitive, the label `LabelName` is the same label as `labelname`.

### Related information



-

## Assembler: --check

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--check** to the **Additional assembler options** field.

### Command line syntax

**--check**

### Description

With this option you can check the source code for syntax errors, without generating code. This saves time in developing your application.

The assembler reports any warnings and/or errors.

### Related information





## Assembler: --cpu (-C)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Processor** entry and select **Processor Definition**.
3. Select a processor from the **Select processor** box.

### Command line syntax

--cpu=cpu  
-Ccpu

### Description

With this option you define the CPU core for which you create your application. The TSK165x target has more than one processor type and therefore you need to specify for which processor type the assembler should assemble.

The effect of this option is that the assembler includes the appropriate special function register file: `regcpu.sfr`. You choose one of the following CPU's: TSK165A, TSK165B or TSK165C.

Assembly code can check the value of the option by means of the built-in function `@CPU( )`.

### Example

To assemble the file `test.src` for the TSK165x processor and use the SFR file for the TSK165A processor type, enter the following on command line:

```
as165x --cpu=tsk165a test.src
```

The assembler includes the SFR file `regtsk165a.sfr` and assembles for the chosen processor type.

### Related information



Assembly function `@CPU( )`

## Assembler: **--debug-info (-g)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Debug Information**.
3. Select which debug information to include: **Automatic HLL or assembly level debug information**, **Custom debug information** or **No debug information**.

*If you select **Custom debug information**:*

4. Select which Custom debug information to include: **Assembler source line information**, **Pass HLL debug information**, or **None**.
5. Enable or disable the option **Assembler local symbols information**.

### Command line syntax

```
--debug-info[=flag]  
-g[flag]
```

You can set the following flags:

<b>+/-asm</b>	<b>(a/A)</b>	Assembly source line information
<b>+/-hll</b>	<b>(h/H)</b>	Pass high level language debug information (HLL)
<b>+/-local</b>	<b>(l/L)</b>	Assembler local symbols debug information
<b>+/-smart</b>	<b>(s/S)</b>	Smart debug information

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler which kind of debug information to emit in the object file.

If you do not use this option, the default is **--debug-info=+hll**. If you specify **--debug-info** without any flags, the default is **--debug-info=+smart**.

You cannot specify **--debug-info=+asm,+hll**. Either the assembler generates assembly source line information, or it passes HLL debug information.

When you specify **--debug-info=+smart**, the assembler selects which flags to use. If high level language information is available in the source file, the assembler passes this information (same as **--debug-info=-asm,+hll,-local**). If not, the assembler generates assembly source line information (same as **--debug-info=+asm,-hll,+local**).

With **--debug-info=AHLS** the assembler does not generate any debug information.

### Related information



## Assembler: --define (-D)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Preprocessing**.
3. Click on **User macro**, click on the down arrow in the right pane to expand macro input.
4. Click on an empty **Macro** field and enter a macro name. (Then click outside the cell to confirm)
5. Optionally, click in the **Value** field and enter a definition. (Then click outside the cell to confirm)

### Command line syntax

```
--define=macro_name[=macro_definition]  
-Dmacro_name[=macro_definition]
```

### Description

With this option you can define a macro and specify it to the assembler preprocessor. If you only specify a macro name (no macro definition), the macro expands as '1'.

You can specify as many macros as you like. On the command line you can use the option **--define (-D)** multiple times. If the command line exceeds the limit of the operating system, you can define the macros in an *option file* which you then must specify to the assembler with the option **--option-file=file (-f)**.

Defining macros with this option (instead of in the assembly source) is, for example, useful in combination with conditional assembly as shown in the example below.



This option has the same effect as defining symbols via the `.DEFINE`, `.SET`, and `.EQU` directives. (similar to `#define` in the C language). With the `.MACRO` directive you can define more complex macros.

### Example

Consider the following assembly program with conditional code to assemble a demo program and a real program:

```
.IF DEMO == 1  
...      ; instructions for demo application  
.ELSE  
...      ; instructions for the real application  
.ENDIF
```

You can now use a macro definition to set the DEMO flag:

<u>Macro</u>	<u>Value</u>
DEMO	1 (or empty)

```
as165x --define=DEMO test.src  
as165x --define=DEMO=1 test.src
```

Note that both invocations have the same effect.

### Related information



Assembler option **--option-file** (Read options from file)

## Assembler: --diag

### Menu entry

1. From the **View** menu, select **Workspace Panels » System » Messages**.

*The Messages panel appears.*

2. In the **Messages** panel, right-click on the message you want more information on.

*A popup menu appears.*

3. Select **More Info**.

*A Message Info box appears with additional information.*

### Command line syntax

`--diag=[format:]{all|nr,...}`

### Description

With this option you can ask for an extended description of error messages in the format you choose. The output is directed to `stdout` (normally your screen) and in the format you specify. You can specify the following formats: **html**, **rtf** or **text** (default). To create a file with the descriptions, you must redirect the output.

With the suboption **all**, the descriptions of all error messages are given. If you want the description of one or more selected error messages, you can specify the error message numbers, separated by commas.

With this option the assembler does not assemble any files.

### Example

To display an explanation of message number 241, enter:

```
as165x --diag=241
```

This results in the following message and explanation:

```
W241: additional input files will be ignored
```

```
The assembler supports only a single input file. All other input files are ignored.
```

To write an explanation of all errors and warnings in HTML format to file `aserrors.html`, use redirection and enter:

```
as165x --diag=html:all > aserrors.html
```

### Related information



## Assembler: --emit-locals

### Menu entry

*Command line only.*

### Command line syntax

**--emit-locals**

### Description

With this option the assembler also emits local symbols to the object file. Normally, only global symbols are emitted. Having local symbols in the object file can be useful for debugging.

### Related information



## Assembler: `--error-file`

### Menu entry

*Command line only.*

### Command line syntax

`--error-file[=file]`

### Description

With this option the assembler redirects error messages to a file.

If you do not specify a filename, the error file will be named after the input file with extension `.ers`.

### Example

To write errors to `errors.err` instead of `stderr`, enter:

```
as165x --error-file=errors.err test.src
```

### Related information



## Assembler: --help (-?)

### Menu entry

*Command line only.*

### Command line syntax

--help[=options]  
-?

### Description

Displays an overview of all command line options. When you specify the argument **options** you can list detailed option descriptions.

### Example

The following invocations all display a list of the available command line options:

```
as165x -?  
as165x --help  
as165x
```

To see a detailed description of the available options, enter:

```
as165x --help=options
```

## Assembler: **--include-directory (-I)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Select **Build Options**.
3. Add a pathname in the **Include Files Path** field.

If you enter multiple paths, separate them with a semicolon (;).

### Command line syntax

**--include-directory=***path*,...  
**-I***path*,...

### Description

With this option you can specify the path where your include files are located. A relative path will be relative to the current directory.

The order in which the assembler searches for include files is:

1. The pathname in the assembly file and the directory of the assembly source.
2. The path that is specified with this option.
3. The path that is specified in the environment variable `AS165XINC` when the product was installed.
4. The default `include` directory relative to the installation directory.

### Example

Suppose that your assembly source file `test.src` contains the following line:

```
.INCLUDE 'myinc.inc'
```

You can call the assembler as follows:

```
as165x --include-directory=c:\proj\include test.src
```

First the assembler looks in the directory where `test.src` is located for the file `myinc.inc`. If it does not find the file, it looks in the directory `c:\proj\include` for the file `myinc.inc` (this option). If the file is still not found, the assembler searches in the environment variable and then in the default `include` directory.

### Related information



Assembler option **--include-file (-H)** (Include file before source)



## Assembler: --include-file (-H)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Preprocessing**.
3. Enter the name of the file in the **Include this file before source** field or click ... and select a file.

### Command line syntax

--include-file=*file*,...  
-H*file*,...

### Description

With this option (set at project level) you include one extra file at the beginning of the assembly source file. The specified include file is included before all other includes. This is the same as specifying `.INCLUDE 'file'` at the beginning of your assembly source.

### Example

```
as165x --include-file=myinc.inc test1.src
```

The file `myinc.inc` is included at the beginning of `test1.src` before it is assembled.

### Related information



Assembler option **--include-directory** (Include files path)

Section 2.4, [How the Assembler Searches Include Files](#), in chapter *Using the Assembler* of the user's manual.

## Assembler: **--keep-output-files (-k)**

### Menu entry

Altium Designer *always* removes the object file when errors occur during assembling.

### Command line syntax

**--keep-output-files**  
**-k**

### Description

If an error occurs during assembling, the resulting object file (.obj) may be incomplete or incorrect. With this option you keep the generated object file when an error occurs.

By default the assembler removes the generated object file when an error occurs. This is useful when you use the make utility. If the erroneous files are not removed, the make utility may process corrupt files on a subsequent invocation.

Use this option when you still want to use the generated object. For example when you know that a particular error does not result in a corrupt object file.

### Related information



## Assembler: --list-file (-l)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **List File**.
3. Enable **Generate list file**.
4. In the **List file format** section, enable or disable the types of information to be included.

### Command line syntax

--list-file[=*file*]  
-l[*file*]

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler to generate a list file. A list file shows the generated object code and the relative addresses. Note that the assembler generates a relocatable object file with relative addresses.

With the optional *file* you can specify an alternative name for the list file. By default, the name of the list file is the basename of the source file with the extension `.lst`.

### Related information



On the command line you can use the option **--list-format (-L)** to specify which types of information should be included in the list file.

## Assembler: --list-format (-L)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **List File**.
3. Enable **Generate list file**.
4. In the **List file format** section, enable or disable the types of information to be included.

### Command line syntax

--list-format=flags  
-Lflags

You can set the following flags:

0	Same as -LDEGILMNPQRSVWXY (all options disabled)
1	Same as -Ldegilmnpqrsvwxy (all options enabled)
+/-section	(d/D) Section directives (.SECTION)
+/-symbol	(e/E) Symbol definition directives
+/-generic-expansion	(g/G) Generic instruction expansion
+/-generic	(i/I) Generic instructions
+/-line	(l/L) C preprocessor #line directives
+/-macro	(m/M) Macro/dup definitions (e.g. .MACRO)
+/-empty-line	(n/N) Empty source lines (newline)
+/-conditional	(p/P) Conditional assembly (.IF, .ELSE, .ENDIF)
+/-equate	(q/Q) Assembler .EQU and .SET directives
+/-relocations	(r/R) Relocation characters ('r')
+/-hll	(s/S) HLL symbolic debug information (.SYMB)
+/-equate-values	(v/V) Assembler .EQU and .SET values
+/-wrap-lines	(w/W) Wrapped source lines
+/-macro-expansion	(x/X) Macro expansions
+/-cycle-count	(y/Y) Cycle counts

Default: -LDEGiLMnPqrsVWXy

### Description

With this option you specify which information you want to include in the list file.



On the command line you must use this option in combination with the option --list-file (-I).

### Related information



Assembler option --list-file (Generate list file)

Assembler option --section-info=+list (Display section information in list file)

## Assembler: --no-warnings (-w)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Diagnostics**.
3. Enable one of the options:
  - **Report all warnings**
  - **Suppress all warnings**
  - **Suppress specific warnings**

*If you select **Suppress specific warnings**:*

4. Enter the numbers, separated by commas, of the warnings you want to suppress.

### Command line syntax

```
--no-warnings[=number,...]  
-w[number,...]
```

### Description

With this option you can suppresses all warning messages or specific warning messages.

- If you do not specify this option, all warnings are reported.
- If you specify this option but without numbers, all warnings are suppressed.
- If you specify this option with a number, only the specified warning is suppressed.  
You can specify the option **--no-warnings=number** multiple times.

### Example

To suppress warnings 135 and 136, enter **135, 136** in the **Specific warnings to suppress** field, or enter the following on the command line:

```
as165x test.src --no-warnings=135,136
```

### Related information



Assembler option **--warnings-as-errors** (Treat warnings as errors)

## Assembler: --optimize (-O)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Optimization**.
3. Enable or disable the optimization options:
  - **Generic instructions**
  - **Jump chains**
  - **Instruction size**

### Command line syntax

**-Oflags**

**--optimize=flags**

You can set the following flags:

<b>+/-generics</b>	<b>(g/G)</b>	Allow <b>generic instructions</b>
<b>+/-jumpchains</b>	<b>(j/J)</b>	<b>Jump chains</b>
<b>+/-instr-size</b>	<b>(s/S)</b>	Optimize <b>instruction size</b>

Default: **--optimize=gJs**

### Description

#### Allow generic instructions

If you use generic instructions in your assembly source, the assembler can optimize them by replacing it with the fastest or shortest possible variant of that instruction. By default this option is enabled. If you turn off this optimization, the assembler generates an error on generic instructions.

#### Jump chains

With this optimization, the assembler replaces chained jumps by a single jump instruction. For example, a jump from *a* to *b* immediately followed by a jump from *b* to *c*, is replaced by a jump from *a* to *c*.

#### Optimize instruction size

With this optimization the assembler tries to find the shortest possible operand encoding for instructions.

### Related information



Section 2.5, [Assembler Optimizations](#) in chapter *Using the Assembler* of the user's manual.

## Assembler: --option-file (-f)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--option-file** to the **Additional assembler options** field.

Be aware that the options in the option file are added to the assembler options you have set in the other dialogs. Only in extraordinary cases you may want to use them in combination.

### Command line syntax

**--option-file=***file*,...  
**-f** *file*,...

### Description

This option is primarily intended for command line use. Instead of typing all options on the command line, you can create an option file which contains all options and flags you want to specify. With this option you specify the option file to the assembler.

Use an option file when the command line would exceed the limits of the operating system, or just to store options and save typing.

Option files can also be generated on the fly, for example by the make utility. You can specify the option **--option-file** multiple times.

### Format of an option file

- Multiple arguments on one line in the option file are allowed.
- To include whitespace in an argument, surround the argument with single or double quotes.
- If you want to use single quotes as part of the argument, surround the argument by double quotes and vice versa:

```
"This has a single quote ' embedded"
```

```
'This has a double quote " embedded'
```

```
'This has a double quote " and a single quote "'" embedded"
```

- When a text line reaches its length limit, use a ' to continue the line. Whitespace between quotes is preserved.

```
"This is a continuation \  
line"
```

```
-> "This is a continuation line"
```

- It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

### Example

Suppose the file `myoptions` contains the following lines:

```
-gaL  
test.src
```

Specify the option file to the assembler:

```
as165x --option-file=myoptions
```

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
as165x -gaL test.src
```

### Related information



## Assembler: --output (-o)

### Menu entry

Altium Designer names the output file always after the source file.

### Command line syntax

`--output=file`  
`-o file`

### Description

With this option you can specify another filename for the output file of the assembler. Without this option, the basename of the assembly source file is used with extension `.obj`.

### Example

To create the file `relobj.obj` instead of `asm.obj`, enter:

```
as165x --output=relobj.obj asm.src
```

### Related information





## Assembler: `--preprocessor-type (-m)`

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option `--preprocessor-type` to the **Additional assembler options** field.

### Command line syntax

`--preprocessor-type={none|tasking}`  
`-m{n|t}`                      Default: `-mt`

### Description

With this option you select the preprocessor that the assembler will use. By default, the assembler uses the TASKING preprocessor.

When the assembly source file does not contain any preprocessor symbols, you can specify to the assembler not to use a preprocessor.

### Related information



## Assembler: **--section-info (-t)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **List File**.
3. Enable **Generate list file**.
4. Enable the option **Display section information**.

### Command line syntax

```
--section-info[=flags]  
-t[flags]
```

You can set the following flags:

<b>+/-console</b>	<b>(c/C)</b>	Display section information on stdout.
<b>+/-list</b>	<b>(l/L)</b>	Write section information to the list file.

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler to display section information. For each section its memory space, size, total cycle counts and name is listed on stdout and/or in the list file.

The cycle count consists of two parts: the total accumulated count for the section and the total accumulated count for all repeated instructions. In the case of nested loops it is possible that the total supersedes the section total.

Without arguments this option is the same as **--section-info=cl**.



With **--section-info=l**, the assembler writes the section information to the list file. You must specify this option in combination with the option **--list-file** (generate list file).

### Example

```
as165x --list-file --section-info=+console,+list test.src
```

The assembler generates a list file and writes the section information to this file. The section information is also displayed on stdout.

### Related information



Assembler option **--list-file** (generate list file)

## Assembler: --symbol-scope (-i)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Select the default label mode: **Local** or **Global**.

### Command line syntax

--symbol-scope={global|local}  
-i{g|l} (Default: -il)

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler how to treat symbols that you have not specified explicitly as global or local. By default the assembler treats all symbols as local symbols unless you have defined them explicitly as global.

### Related information



## Assembler: --version (-V)

### Menu entry

*Command line only.*

### Command line syntax

--version  
-V

### Description

Displays version information of the assembler. The assembler ignores all other options or input files.

### Related information



## Assembler: **--verbose (-v)**

### **Menu entry**

*Command line only.*

### **Command line syntax**

**--verbose**  
**-v**

### **Description**

With this option you put the assembler in verbose mode. The assembler prints the filenames and the assembly passes while it processes the files so you can monitor the current status of the assembler.

### **Related information**



## Assembler: --warnings-as-errors

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Diagnostics**.
3. Enable the option **Treat warnings as errors**.

### Command line syntax

### Description

If the assembler encounters an error, it stops assembling. When you use this option without arguments, you tell the assembler to treat all warnings as errors. This means that the exit status of the assembler will be non-zero after one or more compiler warnings. As a consequence, the assembler now also stops after encountering a warning.

### Related information



Assembler option **--no-warnings** (Suppress some or all warnings)

## 2.2 Linker Options

Altium Designer uses a *makefile* to build your entire project. This means that you cannot run the linker separately. However, you can set options specific for the linker.

### ***Options in Altium Designer versus options on the command line***

Most command line options have an equivalent option in Altium Designer but some options are only available on the command line (for example in a Windows Command Prompt). If there is no equivalent option in Altium Designer, you can specify a command line option in Altium Designer as follows:

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Enter one or more command line options in the **Additional Linker options** field.

### ***Invocation syntax on the command line (Windows Command Prompt)***

The invocation syntax on the command line is:

When you are linking multiple files (either relocatable object files (.obj) or libraries (.lib), it is important to specify the files in the right order.

### ***Short and long option names***

Options can have both short and long names. Short option names always begin with a single minus (-) character, long option names always begin with double minus (--) characters. You can abbreviate long option names as long as the name is unique. You can mix short and long option names on the command line.

Options can have flags or sub-options. To switch a flag 'on', use a lowercase letter or a *+longflag*. To switch a flag off, use an uppercase letter or a *-longflag*. Separate *longflags* with commas. The following two invocations are equivalent:

When you do not specify an option, a default value may become active.

## Linker: --case-insensitive

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. *Disable* the option **Link case sensitive**.

### Command line syntax

**--case-insensitive**

### Description

With this option you tell the linker not to distinguish between upper and lower case characters in symbols. By default the linker considers upper and lower case characters as different characters.



*Disabling* the option **Link case sensitive** in Altium Designer is the same as specifying the option **--case-insensitive** on the command line.

When you have written your own assembly code and specified to assemble it case insensitive, you must also link the `.obj` file case insensitive.

### Related information





## Linker: --chip-output (-c)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Output Format**.
3. Enable the options **Intel HEX records** and/or **Motorola S-records**.

### Command line syntax

```
--chip-output=[basename]:format[:addr_size],...  
-c[basename]:format[:addr_size],...
```

You can specify the following formats:

<b>IHEX</b>	Intel Hex
<b>SREC</b>	Motorola S-records

The *addr\_size* specifies the size of the addresses in bytes (record length). For Intel Hex you can use the values **1**, **2** or **4** bytes (default). For Motorola-S you can specify: **2** (S1 records), **3** (S2 records) or **4** bytes (S3 records, default). In Altium Designer you cannot specify the address size because Altium Designer always uses the default values.

### Description

With this option you specify the Intel Hex or Motorola S-record output format for loading into a PROM-programmer. The linker generates a file for each ROM memory defined in the LSL file, where sections are located:

```
memory memname  
{ type=rom; }
```

The name of the file is the name of the Altium Designer project or, on the command line, the name of the memory device that was emitted with extension `.hex` or `.sre`. Optionally, you can specify a *basename* which prepends the generated file name.



The linker always outputs a debugging file in IEEE-695 format and optionally an absolute object file in Intel Hex-format and/or Motorola S-record format.

### Example

To generate Intel Hex output files for each defined memory, enter the following on the command line:

```
lk165x --chip-output=myfile:IHEX test1.obj
```

In this case, this generates the file `myfile_memname.hex`

### Related information



Linker option **--output** (Output file)

Section 4.2, [Motorola S-Record Format](#),  
Section 4.3, [Intel Hex Record Format](#), in Chapter *Object File Formats*.

## Linker: **--define (-D)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--define** to the **Additional linker options** field.

### Command line syntax

```
--define=macro_name[=macro_definition]  
-Dmacro_name[=macro_definition]
```

### Description

With this option you can define a macro and specify it to the linker LSL file preprocessor. If you only specify a macro name (no macro definition), the macro expands as '1'.

You can specify as many macros as you like; just use the option **--define** multiple times. If the command line exceeds the limit of the operating system, you can define the macros in an *option file* which you then must specify to the linker with the option **--option-file=file (-f)**.

The definition can be tested by the preprocessor with **#if**, **#ifdef** and **#ifndef**, for conditional locating.

### Example

To define the heap size which is used in the linker script file `165x.lsl`, enter:

```
lk165x test.obj -otest.abs -d165x.lsl -D__HEAP=8
```

or using the long option names:

```
lk165x test.obj -otest.abs --lsl-file=165x.lsl --define=__HEAP=8
```

### Related information



Linker option **--option-file** (Read options from file)

## Linker: --diag

### Menu entry

1. From the **View** menu, select **Workspace Panels » System » Messages**.

*The Messages panel appears.*

2. In the **Messages** panel, right-click on the message you want more information on.

*A popup menu appears.*

3. Select **More Info**.

*A Message Info box appears with additional information.*

### Command line syntax

**--diag**=[format:]{all|nr,...]

### Description

With this option you can ask for an extended description of error messages in the format you choose. The output is directed to `stdout` (normally your screen) and in the format you specify. You can specify the following formats: **html**, **rtf** or **text** (default). To create a file with the descriptions, you must redirect the output.

With the suboption **all**, the descriptions of all error messages are given. If you want the description of one or more selected error messages, you can specify the error message numbers, separated by commas.

With this option the linker does not link/locate any files.

### Example

To display an explanation of message number 106, enter:

```
lk165x --diag=106
```

This results in the following message and explanation:

```
E106: unresolved external: <message>
```

```
The linker could not resolve all external symbols. This is an error when the incremental linking option is disabled. The <message> indicates the symbol that is unresolved.
```

To write an explanation of all errors and warnings in HTML format to file `lerrors.html`, enter:

```
lk165x --diag=html:all > lerrors.html
```

### Related information



## Linker: `--error-file`

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

`--error-file[=file]`

### Description

With this option the linker redirects error messages to a file.

If you do not specify a filename, the error file is `lk165x.elk`.

### Example

To write errors to `errors.elk` instead of `stderr`, enter:

```
lk165x --error-file=errors.elk test.obj
```

### Related information



## Linker: **--error-limit**

### **Menu entry**

-

### **Command line syntax**

**--error-limit=number**

### **Description**

With this option you tell the linker to only emit the specified maximum number of errors. When 0 (null) is specified, the linker emits all errors. Without this option the maximum number of errors is 42.

### **Related information**



## Linker: **--extern (-e)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--extern** to the **Additional linker options** field.

### Command line syntax

**--extern=symbol**  
**-e symbol**

### Description

With this option you force the linker to consider the given symbol as an undefined reference. The linker tries to resolve this symbol, either the symbol is defined in an object file or the linker extracts the corresponding symbol definition from a library.

This option is, for example, useful if the startup code is part of a library. Because your own application does not refer to the startup code, you can force the startup code to be extracted by specifying the symbol `__start` as an unresolved external.

### Example

Consider the following invocation:

```
lk165x mylib.lib
```

Nothing is linked and no output file will be produced, because there are no unresolved symbols when the linker searches through `mylib.lib`.

```
lk165x --extern=__start mylib.lib
```

In this case the linker searches for the symbol `__start` in the library and (if found) extracts the object that contains `__start`, the startup code. If this module contains new unresolved symbols, the linker looks again in `mylib.lib`. This process repeats until no new unresolved symbols are found.

### Related information



Section 3.4, [Linking with Libraries](#), in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Linker: **--first-library first**

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

**--first-library-first**

### Description

When the linker processes a library it searches for symbols that are referenced by the objects and libraries processed so far. If the library contains a definition for an unresolved reference the linker extracts the object that contains the definition from the library.

By default the linker processes object files and libraries in the order in which they appear on the command line. If you specify the option **--first-library-first** the linker always tries to take the symbol definition from the library that appears first on the command line before scanning subsequent libraries.

This is for example useful when you are working with a newer version of a library that partially overlaps the older version. Because they do not contain exactly the same functions, you have to link them both. However, when a function is present in both libraries, you may want the linker to extract the most recent function.

### Example

Consider the following example:

```
lk165x --first-library-first a.lib test.obj b.lib
```

If the file `test.obj` calls a function which is both present in `a.lib` and `b.lib`, normally the function in `b.lib` would be extracted. With this option the linker first tries to extract the symbol from the first library `a.lib`.

Note that routines in `b.lib` that call other routines that are present in both `a.lib` and `b.lib` are now also resolved from `a.lib`.

### Related information



Linker option **--no-rescan** (Rescan libraries to solve unresolved externals)

## Linker: --help (-?)

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

```
--help[=options]  
-?
```

### Description

Displays an overview of all command line options. When you specify the argument **options** you can list detailed option descriptions.

### Example

The following invocations all display a list of the available command line options:

```
lk165x -?  
lk165x --help  
lk165x
```

To see a detailed description of the available options, enter:

```
lk165x --help=options
```



## Linker: **--include-directory (-I)**

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

**--include-directory=***path*,...  
**-I***path*,...

### Description

With this option you can specify the path where your LSL include files are located. A relative path will be relative to the current directory.

The order in which the linker searches for LSL include files is:

1. The pathname in the LSL file and the directory where the LSL file is located (only for `#include` files that are enclosed in `""`)
2. The path that is specified with this option.
3. The default directory `$(PRODDIR)\include.lsl`.

### Example

Suppose that your linker script file `myls1.lsl` contains the following line:

```
#include "myinc.inc"
```

You can call the linker as follows:

```
lk165x --include-directory=c:\proj\include --ls1-file=myls1.lsl test.obj
```

First the linker looks in the directory where `myls1.lsl` is located for the file `myinc.inc`. If it does not find the file, it looks in the directory `c:\proj\include` for the file `myinc.inc` (this option). Finally it looks in the directory `$(PRODDIR)\include.lsl`.

### Related information



## Linker: --incremental (-r)

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

--incremental  
-r

### Description

Normally the linker links and locates the specified object files. With this option you tell the linker only to link the specified files. The linker creates a linker output file `.out`. You then can link this file again with other object files until you have reached the final linker output file that is ready for locating.

In the last pass, you call the linker without this option with the final linker output file `.out`. The linker will now locate the file.

### Example

In this example, the files `test1.obj`, `test2.obj` and `test3.obj` are incrementally linked:

1. `lk165x --incremental test1.obj test2.obj -otest.out`  
*test1.obj and test2.obj are linked*
2. `lk165x --incremental test3.obj test.out`  
*test3.obj and test.out are linked, task1.out is created*
3. `lk165x task1.out`  
*task1.out is located*

### Related information



Section 3.5, [Incremental Linking](#) in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Linker: **--keep-output-files (-k)**

### **Menu entry**

Altium Designer *always* removes the output files when errors occurred.

### **Command line syntax**

**--keep-output-files**  
**-k**

### **Description**

If an error occurs during linking, the resulting output file may be incomplete or incorrect. With this option you keep the generated output files when an error occurs.

By default the linker removes the generated output file when an error occurs. This is useful when you use the make utility. If the erroneous files are not removed, the make utility may process corrupt files on a subsequent invocation.

Use this option when you still want to use the generated file. For example when you know that a particular error does not result in a corrupt object file, or when you want to inspect the output file, or send it to Altium support.

### **Related information**



## Linker: `--link-only`

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

`--link-only`

### Description

With this option you suppress the locating phase. The linker stops after linking and informs you about unresolved references.

### Related information



Control program option `-cl` (Stop after linking)

## Linker: **--lsl-check**

### Menu entry

-

### Command line syntax

**--lsl-check**

### Description

With this option the linker just checks the syntax of the LSL file(s) and exits. No linking or locating is performed. Use the option **--lsl-file=***file* to specify the name of the Linker Script File you want to test.

### Related information



Linker option **--lsl-file** (Linker script file)

Linker option **--lsl-dump** (Dump LSL info)

Section 3.7, [Controlling the Linker with a Script](#), in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Linker: **--lsl-dump**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Enable the option **Dump processor and memory info from LSL file**.

### Command line syntax

**--lsl-dump**[=file]

### Description

With this option you tell the linker to dump the LSL part of the map file in a separate file, independent of the option **--map-file** (generate map file). If you do not specify a filename, the file `lktarget.ldf` is used.

### Related information



Linker option **--map-file-format** (Map file formatting)

## Linker: --lsl-file (-d)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Enable the option **Use project specific LSL file**.
4. In the **LSL file** field, type a name or click ... and select an LSL file.

### Command line syntax

--lsl-file=file  
-dfile

### Description

A linker script file contains vital information about the core for the locating phase of the linker. A linker script file is coded in LSL and contains the following types of information:

- the architecture definition describes the core's hardware architecture.
- the memory definition describes the physical memory available in the system.
- the section layout definition describes how to locate sections in memory.

With this option you specify a linker script file to the linker. If you do not specify this option, the linker uses a default script file. You can specify the existing file 165x.lsl or the name of a manually written linker script file. You can use this option multiple times. The linker processes the LSL files in the order in which they appear on the command line.

### Related information



Linker option **--lsl-check** (Check LSL file(s) and exit)

Section 3.7, *Controlling the Linker with a Script*, in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Linker: --map-file (-M)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Map File**.
3. Enable the option **Generate a memory map file (.map)**.
4. In the **Map file format** section, enable or disable the information you want to be included in the map file.

### Command line syntax

```
--map-file[=file]  
-M[file]
```

### Description

With this option you tell the linker to generate a linker map file. If you do not specify a filename and you specified the **-o** option, the linker uses the same basename as the output file with the extension `.map`. If you did not specify the **-o** option, the linker uses the file `task1.map`. Altium Designer names the `.map` file after the project.

A linker map file is a text file that shows how the linker has mapped the sections and symbols from the various object files (`.obj`) to the linked object file. A locate part shows the absolute position of each section. External symbols are listed per space with their absolute address, both sorted on symbol and sorted on address.

### Related information



With the option **--map-file-format** (map file formatting) you can specify which parts you want to place in the map file.

Section 3.2, [Linker Map File Format](#), in Chapter *List File Formats*.



## Linker: --map-file-format (-m)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Map File**.
3. Enable the option **Generate a map file (.map)**.
4. In the **Map file format** section, enable or disable the information you want to be included in the map file.

### Command line syntax

`--map-file-format=flags`  
`-mflags`

You can specify the following formats:

0		Same as <code>-mcfikLMNoQrSU</code> (link information)
1		Same as <code>-mCfIKIMNoQRSU</code> (locate information)
2		Same as <code>-mcfiklmNoQrSu</code> (most information)
<code>+/-callgraph</code>	<code>(c/C)</code>	Call graph information
<code>+/-files</code>	<code>(f/F)</code>	Processed files information
<code>+/-invocation</code>	<code>(i/I)</code>	Invocation and tool information
<code>+/-link</code>	<code>(k/K)</code>	Link result information
<code>+/-locate</code>	<code>(l/L)</code>	Locate result information
<code>+/-memory</code>	<code>(m/M)</code>	Memory usage information
<code>+/-nonalloc</code>	<code>(n/N)</code>	Non alloc information
<code>+/-overlay</code>	<code>(o/O)</code>	Overlay information
<code>+/-statics</code>	<code>(q/Q)</code>	Module local symbols
<code>+/-crossref</code>	<code>(r/R)</code>	Cross references information
<code>+/-lsl</code>	<code>(s/S)</code>	Processor and memory information
<code>+/-rules</code>	<code>(u/U)</code>	Locate rules

### Description

With this option you specify which information you want to include in the map file. Use this option in combination with the option `--map-file (-M)`.

If you do not specify this option, the linker uses the default: `--map-file-format=2`.

### Related information



Linker option `--map-file` (Generate map file)

## Linker: --non-romable

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--non-romable** to the **Additional linker options** field.

### Command line syntax

**--non-romable**

### Description

With this option, the linker will locate all ROM sections in RAM. A copy table is generated and is located in RAM. When the application is started, that data and BSS sections are re-initialized.

### Related information



## Linker: --no-rescan

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Libraries**.
3. *Disable* the option **Rescan libraries to solve unresolved externals**.

### Command line syntax

**--no-rescan**

### Description

When the linker processes a library it searches for symbol definitions that are referenced by the objects and libraries processed so far. If the library contains a definition for an unresolved reference the linker extracts the object that contains the definition from the library. The linker processes object files and libraries in the order in which they appear on the command line.

When all objects and libraries are processed the linker checks if there are unresolved symbols left. If so, the default behavior of the linker is to rescan all libraries in the order given at the command line. The linker stops rescanning the libraries when all symbols are resolved, or when the linker could not resolve any symbol(s) during the rescan of all libraries. Notice that resolving one symbol may introduce new unresolved symbols.

With this option, you tell the linker to scan the object files and libraries only once. When the linker has not resolved all symbols after the first scan, it reports which symbols are still unresolved. This option is useful if you are building your own libraries. The libraries are most efficiently organized if the linker needs only one pass to resolve all symbols.

### Related information



Linker option **--first-library-first** (Scan libraries in given order)

## Linker: **--no-rom-copy (-N)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--no-rom-copy** to the **Additional linker options** field.

### Command line syntax

**--no-rom-copy**  
**-N**

### Description

With this option the linker will not generate a ROM copy for data sections. A copy table is generated and contains entries to clear BSS section. However, no entries to copy data sections from ROM to RAM are placed in the copy table.

The data sections are initialized when the application is downloaded. The data sections are not re-initialized when the application is restarted.

### Related information



## Linker: --no-warnings (-w)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Diagnostics**.
3. Set **Error reporting** to one of the following values:
  - **Report all warnings**
  - **Suppress all warnings**
  - **Suppress specific warnings.**

*If you select **Suppress specific warnings**:*

4. Enter the numbers, separated by commas, of the warnings you want to suppress.

### Command line syntax

```
--no-warnings[=number,...]  
-w[number,...]
```

### Description

With this option you can suppresses all warning messages or specific warning messages.

- If you do not specify this option, all warnings are reported.
- If you specify this option but without numbers, all warnings are suppressed.
- If you specify this option with a number, only the specified warning is suppressed. You can specify the option **--no-warnings=number** multiple times.

### Example

To suppress warnings 135 and 136, enter **135, 136** in the **Specific warnings to suppress** field, or enter the following on the command line:

```
lk165x --no-warnings=135,136 test.obj
```

### Related information



Linker option **--warnings-as-errors** (Treat warnings as errors)

## Linker: --optimize (-O)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Optimization**.
3. Select an optimization level in the **Optimization level** box.  
*If you select **Custom Optimization**:*
4. Enable the optimizations you want.

### Command line syntax

--optimize[=flags]  
-O[flags]

Use the following options for predefined sets of flags:

--optimize=0	(-O0)	<b>No optimization</b> Alias for: <b>-OCLTX</b>
--optimize=1	(-O1)	<b>Default optimization</b> Alias for: <b>-OCLtxy</b>
--optimize=2	(-O2)	All optimizations Alias for: <b>-Ocltxy</b>

You can set the following flags:

+/-delete-unreferenced-sections	(c/C)	Delete unreferenced sections from the output file
+/-first-fit-decreasing	(l/L)	Use a 'first fit decreasing' algorithm to locate unrestricted sections in memory.
+/-copytable-compression	(t/T)	Emit smart restrictions to reduce copy table size
+/-delete-duplicate-code	(x/X)	Delete duplicate code sections from the output file
+/-delete-duplicate-data	(y/Y)	Delete duplicate constant data from the output file

### Description

With this option you can control the level of optimization the linker performs. If you do not use this option, **--optimize=1** is the default.

### Related information



Section 3.6, [Linker Optimizations](#), in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Linker: --option-file (-f)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--option-file** to the **Additional linker options** field.

Be aware that the options in the option file are added to the linker options you have set in the other dialogs. Only in extraordinary cases you may want to use them in combination. Altium Designer automatically saves the options with your project.

### Command line syntax

**--option-file=file**  
**-f file**

### Description

This option is primarily intended for command line use. Instead of typing all options on the command line, you can create an option file which contains all options and flags you want to specify. With this option you specify the option file to the linker.

Use an option file when the length of the command line would exceed the limits of the operating system, or just to store options and save typing.

You can specify the option **--option-file** multiple times.

### Format of an option file

- Multiple arguments on one line in the option file are allowed.
- To include whitespace in an argument, surround the argument with single or double quotes.
- If you want to use single quotes as part of the argument, surround the argument by double quotes and vice versa:

```
"This has a single quote ' embedded"  
'This has a double quote " embedded'  
'This has a double quote " and a single quote "'" embedded"
```

- When a text line reaches its length limit, use a \ to continue the line. Whitespace between quotes is preserved.

```
"This is a continuation \  
line"  
  
-> "This is a continuation line"
```

- It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

### Example

Suppose the file `myoptions` contains the following lines:

```
-Mmymap      (generate a map file)  
test.obj     (input file)  
-Lc:\mylibs  (additional search path for system libraries)
```

Specify the option file to the linker:

```
lk165x --option-file=myoptions
```

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
lk165x -Mmymap test.obj -Lc:\mylibs
```

### Related information



## Linker: --output (-o)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Output Format**.
3. Enable one or more output formats

### Command line syntax

```
--output=[filename][:format[:addr_size]]...  
-o[filename][:format[:addr_size]]...
```

You can specify the following formats:

```
IEEE  IEEE-695  
ELF   ELF/DWARF  
IHEX  Intel Hex  
SREC  Motorola S-records
```

### Description

By default, the linker generates an output file in IEEE-695 format, named after the first input file with extension `.abs`.

With this option you can specify an alternative *filename*, and an alternative *output* format. The default output format is the format of the first input file.

You can use the **--output** option multiple times. This is useful to generate multiple output formats. With the first occurrence of the **--output** option you specify the basename (the filename without extension), which is used for subsequent **--output** options with no filename specified. If you do not specify a filename, or you do not specify the **--output** option at all, the linker uses the default basename `taskn`.

### IHEX and SREC formats

If you specify the Intel Hex format or the Motorola S-records format, you can use the argument *addr\_size* to specify the size of addresses in bytes (record length). For Intel Hex you can use the values: **1**, **2**, and **4** (default). For Motorola S-records you can specify: **2** (S1 records), **3** (S2 records) or **4** bytes (S3 records, default).

The name of the output file will be *filename* with the extension `.hex` or `.sre` and contains the code and data allocated in the default address space. If they exist, any other address spaces are also emitted whereas their output files are named *filename\_spacename.hex* (*.sre*).



Use option **--chip-output (-c)** to create Intel Hex or Motorola S-record output files for each chip defined in the LSL file (suitable for loading into a PROM-programmer).

### Example

To create the output file `myfile.hex` of the default address space:

```
lk165x test.obj --output=myfile.hex:IHEX
```

If they exist, any other address spaces are emitted as well and are named `myfile_spacename.hex`.

### Related information



Linker option **--chip-output** (Generate an output file for each chip)



## Linker: --strip-debug (-S)

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. *Disable* the option **Include symbolic debug information**.

### Command line syntax

--strip-debug  
-S

### Description

With this option you specify not to include symbolic debug information in the resulting output file.

### Related information



## Linker: **--verbose (-v) / --extra-verbose (-vv)**

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Miscellaneous**.
3. Add the option **--verbose** or **--extra-verbose** to the **Additional linker options** field.

### Command line syntax

**--verbose / --extra-verbose**  
**-v / -vv**

### Description

With this option you put the linker in *verbose* mode. The linker prints the link phases while it processes the files. In the *extra verbose* mode, the linker also prints the filenames and it shows which objects are extracted from libraries. With this option you can monitor the current status of the linker.

### Related information



## Linker: --version (-V)

### **Menu entry**

-

### **Command line syntax**

--version

-V

### **Description**

Display version information. The linker ignores all other options or input files.

### **Related information**



## Linker: --warnings-as-errors

### Menu entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**

*The Project Options dialog box appears.*

2. Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Diagnostics**.
3. Enable the option **Treat warnings as errors**.

### Command line syntax

### Description

When the linker detects an error or warning, it tries to continue the link process and reports other errors and warnings. When you use this option without arguments, you tell the linker to treat all warnings as errors. This means that the exit status of the linker will be non-zero after the detection of one or more linker warnings. As a consequence, the linker will not produce any output files.

You can also limit this option to specific warnings by specifying a comma-separated list of warning numbers.

### Related information



Linker option **--no-warnings** (Suppress some or all warnings)

## 2.3 Control Program Options

---

The control program is a tool to facilitate use of the toolset from the command line. Therefore you can only call the control program from the command line. The invocation syntax is:

```
cc165x [option]... [file]...
```

### Options

The control program processes command line options either by itself, or, when the option is unknown to the control program, it looks whether it can pass the option to one of the other tools. However, for directly passing an option to the assembler or linker, it is recommended to use the control program options **--pass-assembler**, **--pass-linker**.

### Short and long option names

Options can have both short and long names. Short option names always begin with a single minus (-) character, long option names always begin with double minus (--) characters. You can abbreviate long option names as long as the name is unique. You can mix short and long option names on the command line.

Options can have flags or sub-options. To switch a flag 'on', use a lowercase letter or a *+longflag*. To switch a flag off, use an uppercase letter or a *-longflag*. Separate *longflags* with commas. The following two invocations are equivalent:

```
cc165x -Wa-Ogs test.asm  
cc165x --pass-assembler=--optimize=+generics,+instr-size test.asm
```

When you do not specify an option, a default value may become active.

## Control Program: **--address-size**

### Command line syntax

**--address-size**=*addr\_size*

### Description

If you specify IHEX or SREC with the control option **--format**, you can additionally specify the record length to be emitted in the output files.

With this option you can specify the size of addresses in bytes (record length). For Intel Hex you can use the values: **1**, **2**, and **4** (default). For Motorola S-records you can specify: **2** (S1 records), **3** (S2 records) or **4** bytes (S3 records, default).

If you do not specify *addr\_size*, the default address size is generated.

### Example

To create the SREC file `test.sre` with S1 records, type:

```
cc165x --format=SREC --address-size=2 test.asm
```

### Related information



[Control program option \*\*--format\*\*](#) (Set linker output format)

[Linker option \*\*--output\*\*](#) (Specify an output object file)

## Control Program: **--check**

### **Command line syntax**

**--check**

### **Description**

With this option you can check the source code for syntax errors, without generating code. This saves time in developing your application.

The assembler reports any warnings and/or errors.

### **Related information**



Assembler option **--check** (Check syntax)

## Control Program: `--cpu (-C)`

### Command line syntax

`--cpu=cpu`  
`-Ccpu`

### Description

With this option you define the CPU core for which you create your application. The TSK165x target has more than one processor type and therefore you need to specify for which processor type you want to create your application.

The effect of this option is that the assembler includes the appropriate special function register file: `regcpu.sfr`. You choose one of the following CPU's: TSK165A, TSK165B or TSK165C.

Assembly code can check the value of the option by means of the built-in function `@CPU( )`.

### Example

To assemble the file `test.src` for the TSK165x processor and use the SFR file for the TSK165A processor type, enter the following on command line:

```
cc165x --cpu=tsk165a test.src
```

The assembler includes the SFR file `regtsk165a.sfr` and assembles for the chosen processor type.

### Related information



Assembler option `--cpu` (Select CPU core type)



## Control Program: **--create** (**-cl/-co**)

### Command line syntax

**--create**[=*stage*]  
**-c**[*stage*]

You can specify the following stages (if you omit the *stage*, the default is **--create=object**):

<b>relocatable</b>	( <b>l</b> )	Stop after the files are linked to a linker object file (.out)
<b>object</b>	( <b>o</b> )	Stop after the files are assembled to objects (.obj)

### Description

Normally the control program generates an absolute object file of the specified output format from the file you supplied as input.

With this option you tell the control program to stop after a certain number of phases.

### Related information



Linker option **--link-only** (Link only, no locating)

## Control Program: **--debug-info (-g)**

### **Command line syntax**

--debug-info  
-g

### **Description**

With this option you tell the control program to include debug information in the generated object file.

### **Related information**



## Control Program: **--define (-D)**

### Command line syntax

```
--define=macro_name[=macro_definition]  
-Dmacro_name[=macro_definition]
```

### Description

With this option you can define a macro and specify it to the preprocessor. If you only specify a macro name (no macro definition), the macro expands as '1'.

You can specify as many macros as you like. On the command line, use the option **--define** multiple times. If the command line exceeds the length limit of the operating system, you can define the macros in an *option file* which you then must specify to the control program with the option **--option-file=file (-f)**.

Defining macros with this option (instead of in the assembly source) is, for example, useful to assemble conditional source as shown in the example below.

The control program passes the option **--define (-D)** to the assembler.

### Example

Consider the following assembly program with conditional code to assemble a demo program and a real program:

```
.section code, code  
.if @DEFINED(DEMO)  
    ; instruction for the demo program  
.else  
    ; instructions for the real program
```

You can now use a macro definition to set the DEMO flag. With the control program this looks as follows:

```
cc165x --define=DEMO test.asm  
cc165x --define=DEMO=1 test.asm
```

Note that both invocations have the same effect.

### Related information



Control Program option **--option-file** (Read options from file)

## Control Program: --diag

### Command line syntax

`--diag=[format:]{all|nr,...}`

### Description

With this option you can ask for an extended description of error messages in the format you choose. The output is directed to `stdout` (normally your screen) and in the format you specify. You can specify the following formats: **html**, **rtf** or **text** (default). To create a file with the descriptions, you must redirect the output.

With the suboption **all**, the descriptions of all error messages are given. If you want the description of one or more selected error messages, you can specify the error message numbers, separated by commas.

With this option the control program does not process any files.

### Example

To display an explanation of message number 103, enter:

```
cc165x --diag=103
```

This results in message 103 with explanation.

To write an explanation of all errors and warnings in HTML format to file `ccerrors.html`, enter:

```
cc165x --diag=html:all > ccerrors.html
```

### Related information



## Control Program: **--dry-run (-n)**

### **Command line syntax**

**--dry-run**  
**-n**

### **Description**

With this option you put the control program *verbose* mode. The control program prints the invocations of the tools it would use to process the files without actually performing the steps.

### **Related information**



Control Program option **--verbose (-v)** (Verbose output)

## Control Program: **--error-file**

### **Command line syntax**

**--error-file**

### **Description**

With this option the control program tells the assembler and linker to redirect error messages to a file.

The error file will be named after the input file with extension `.ers` (for assembler). For the linker, the error file is `lk165x.elk`.

### **Example**

To write errors to error files instead of `stderr`, enter:

```
cc165x --error-file -t test.asm
```

### **Related information**



[Control Program option \*\*--warnings-as-errors\*\*](#) (Treat warnings as errors)

## Control Program: **--format**

### Command line syntax

**--format**=*format*

You can specify the following formats:

**IEEE** IEEE-695  
**ELF** ELF/DWARF  
**IHEX** Intel Hex  
**SREC** Motorola S-records

### Description

With this option you specify the output format for the resulting (absolute) object file. The default output format is IEEE-695, which can directly be used by the debugger.

If you choose IHEX or SREC, you can additionally specify the address size of the chosen format (option **---address-size**).

### Example

To generate an Motorola S-record output file:

```
cc165x --format=SREC test1.asm test2.asm --output=test.sre
```

### Related information



[Control program option \*\*--address-size\*\*](#) (Set address size for linker IHEX/SREC files)

[Linker option \*\*--output\*\*](#) (Specify an output object file)

[Linker option \*\*--chip-output\*\*](#) (Generate hex file for each chip)

## Control Program: **--help (-?)**

### **Command line syntax**

```
--help[=options]  
-?
```

### **Description**

Displays an overview of all command line options. When you specify the argument **options** you can list detailed option descriptions.

### **Example**

The following invocations all display a list of the available command line options:

```
cc165x -?  
cc165x --help  
cc165x
```

To see a detailed description of the available options, enter:

```
cc165x --help=options
```



## Control Program: `--include-directory (-I)`

### Command line syntax

```
--include-directory=path,...  
-Ipath,...
```

### Description

With this option you can specify the path where your include files are located. A relative path will be relative to the current directory.

### Example

Suppose that the assembly file `test.asm` contains the following lines:

```
.INCLUDE 'myinc.inc'
```

You can call the control program as follows:

```
cc165x --include-directory=myinclude test.asm
```

First the assembler looks in the directory where `test.asm` is located for the file `myinc.inc`. If it does not find the file, it looks in the directory `myinclude` for the file `myinc.inc` (this option).

If the file is still not found, the assembler searches in the environment variable and then in the default `include` directory.



**Assembler option `--include-file (-H)`** (Include file before source)

Section 2.4, [How the Assembler Searches Include Files](#), in chapter *Using the Assembler* of the user's manual.

## Control Program: **--keep-output-files (-k)**

### **Command line syntax**

**--keep-output-files**  
**-k**

### **Description**

If an error occurs during the assembling or linking process, the resulting output file may be incomplete or incorrect. With this option you keep the generated output files when an error occurs.

By default the control program removes generated output files when an error occurs. This is useful when you use the make utility. If the erroneous files are not removed, the make utility may process corrupt files on a subsequent invocation.

Use this option when you still want to use the generated files. For example when you know that a particular error does not result in a corrupt file, or when you want to inspect the output file, or send it to Altium support.

### **Related information**



## Control Program: **--keep-temporary-files (-t)**

### Menu Entry

1. From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...**  
*The Project Options dialog box appears.*
2. Select **Build Options**.
3. Enable the option **Keep temporary files that are generated during a compile**.

### Command line syntax

**--keep-temporary-files**  
**-t**

### Description

By default, the control program removes intermediate files like the `.obj` file (result of the assembler phase).

With this option you tell the control program to keep temporary files it generates during the creation of the absolute object file.

### Related information



## Control Program: **--list-files**

### Command line syntax

**--list-files**[=*name*]

### Description

With this option you tell the assembler via the control program to generate a list file for each specified input file. A list file shows the generated object code and the relative addresses. Note that the assembler generates a relocatable object file with relative addresses.

With *name* you can specify a name for the list file. This is only possible if you specify only one input file to the control program. If you do not specify *name*, or you specify more than one input files, the control program names the generated list file(s) after the specified input file(s) with extension `.lst`.

### Example

This example generates the list files `1.lst` and `2.lst` for `1.asm` and `2.asm`. If in this example also a *name* had been specified, it would be ignored because two input files are specified.

```
cc165x 1.asm 2.asm --list-files
```

### Related information



[Assembler option \*\*--list-file\*\*](#) (Generate list file)

[Assembler option \*\*--list-format\*\*](#) (List file formatting options)

## Control Program: **--lsl-file (-d)**

### **Command line syntax**

**--lsl-file=file**  
**-dfile**

### **Description**

A linker script file contains vital information about the core for the locating phase of the linker. A linker script file is coded in LSL and contains the following types of information:

- the architecture and derivative definition describe the core's hardware architecture and its internal memory.
- the board specification describes the physical memory available in the system.
- the section layout definition describes how to locate sections in memory.

With this option you specify a linker script file via the control program to the linker. If you do not specify this option, the linker does not use a script file. You can specify the existing file `165x.lsl` or the name of a manually written linker script file. You can use this option multiple times. The linker processes the LSL files in the order in which they appear on the command line.

### **Related information**



Section 3.7, [Controlling the Linker with a Script](#), in chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.

## Control Program: --no-map-file

### Command line syntax

`--no-map-file`

### Description

By default the control program tells the linker to generate a linker map file.

A linker map file is a text file that shows how the linker has mapped the sections and symbols from the various object files (.obj) to the linked object file. A locate part shows the absolute position of each section. External symbols are listed per space with their absolute address, both sorted on symbol and sorted on address.

With this option you prevent the generation of a map file.

### Related information



## Control Program: **--no-warnings (-w)**

### ***Command line syntax***

**--no-warnings**  
**-w**

### ***Description***

With this option you can suppress all warning messages. If you do not specify this option, all warnings are reported.

### ***Related information***



## Control Program: **--option-file (-f)**

### Command line syntax

**--option-file=***file*  
**-f** *file*

### Description

Instead of typing all options on the command line, you can create an option file which contains all options and flags you want to specify. With this option you specify the option file to the control program.

Use an option file when the command line would exceed the limits of the operating system, or just to store options and save typing.

You can specify the option **--option-file** multiple times.

### Format of an option file

- Multiple arguments on one line in the option file are allowed.
- To include whitespace in an argument, surround the argument with single or double quotes.
- If you want to use single quotes as part of the argument, surround the argument by double quotes and vice versa:

```
"This has a single quote ' embedded"
```

```
'This has a double quote " embedded'
```

```
'This has a double quote " and a single quote ''' embedded"
```

- When a text line reaches its length limit, use a `\` to continue the line. Whitespace between quotes is preserved.

```
"This is a continuation \  
line"
```

```
-> "This is a continuation line"
```

- It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

### Example

Suppose the file `myoptions` contains the following lines:

```
-DDEMO=1  
test.c
```

Specify the option file to the control program:

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
cc165x -DDEMO=1 test.asm
```

### Related information





## Control Program: **--output (-o)**

### **Command line syntax**

**--output=***file*  
**-o** *file*

### **Description**

Default, the control program generates a file with the same basename as the first specified input file. With this option you specify another name for the resulting absolute object file.

### **Example**

```
cc165x test.asm prog.asm
```

The control program generates an IEEE-695 object file (default) with the name `test.abs`.

To generate the file `result.abs`:

```
cc165x --output=result.abs test.asm prog.asm
```

### **Related information**



## Control Program: **--pass (-W)**

### Command line syntax

<code>--pass-assembler=option</code>	<code>(-W<del>a</del>option)</code>	Pass option directly to the assembler
<code>--pass-linker=option</code>	<code>(-W<del>l</del>option)</code>	Pass option directly to the linker

### Description

With this option you tell the control program to call a tool with the specified option. The control program does not use or interpret the option itself, but specifies it directly to the tool which it calls.

### Related information



## Control Program: **--verbose (-v)**

### **Command line syntax**

**--verbose**  
**-v**

### **Description**

With this option you put the control program in verbose mode. With the option **-v** the control program performs its tasks while it prints the steps it performs to `stdout`.

### **Related information**



Control Program option **-n (--dry-run)** (Verbose output and suppress execution)

## Control Program: **--version (-V)**

### **Command line syntax**

--version  
-V

### **Description**

Display version information. The control program ignores all other options or input files.

### **Related information**



## Control Program: **--warnings-as-errors**

### **Command line syntax**

**--warnings-as-errors**

### **Description**

If one of the tools encounters an error, it stops processing the file(s). With this option you tell the tools to treat warnings as errors. As a consequence, the tools now also stop after encountering a warning.

### **Related information**



Control Program option **--no-warnings** (Suppress all warnings)

## 2.4 Make Utility Options

---

When you build a project in Altium Designer, Altium Designer generates a makefile and uses the make utility **tmk** to build all your files. However, you can also use the make utility directly from the command line to build your project.

The invocation syntax is:

```
tmk [option...] [target...] [macro=def]
```

This section describes all options for the make utility. The make utility is a command line tool so there are no equivalent options in Altium Designer.

## Defining Macros

### Command line syntax

**macro**=*definition*

### Description

With this argument you can define a macro and specify it to the make utility.

A macro definition remains in existence during the execution of the makefile, even when the makefile recursively calls the make utility again. In the recursive call, the macro acts as an environment variable. This means that it is overruled by definitions in the recursive call. Use the option **-e** to prevent this.

You can specify as many macros as you like. If the command line exceeds the limit of the operating system, you can define the macros in an *option file* which you then must specify to the make utility with the option **-m file**.

Defining macros on the command line is, for example, useful in combination with conditional processing as shown in the example below.

### Example

Consider the following makefile with conditional rules to build a demo program and a real program:

```
ifdef DEMO      # the value of DEMO is of no importance
    real.abs : demo.obj main.obj
                lk165x demo.obj main.obj -d165x.lsl
else
    real.abs : real.obj main.obj
                lk165x real.obj main.obj -d165x.lsl
endif
```

You can now use a macro definition to set the DEMO flag:

```
tmk real.abs DEMO=1
```

In both cases the absolute object file `real.abs` is created but depending on the DEMO flag it is linked with `demo.obj` or with `real.obj`.

### Related information



[Make utility option -e](#) (Environment variables override macro definitions)

[Make utility option -m](#) (Name of invocation file)

## Make Utility: -?

### Command line syntax

-?

### Description

Displays an overview of all command line options.

### Example

The following invocation displays a list of the available command line options:

```
tmk -?
```

### Related information





## Make Utility: -a

### **Command line syntax**

-a

### **Description**

Normally the make utility rebuilds only those files that are out of date. With this option you tell the make utility to rebuild *all* files, without checking whether they are out of date.

### **Example**

```
tmk -a
```

Rebuilds all your files, regardless of whether they are out of date or not.

### **Related information**



## Make Utility: **-c**

### Command line syntax

**-c**

### Description

Altium Designer uses this option for the graphical version of the make utility when you create sub-projects. In this case the make utility calls another instance of the make utility for the sub-project. With the option **-c**, the make utility runs as a child process of the current make.

The option **-c** overrides the option **-err**.

### Example

```
tmk -c
```

The make utility runs its commands as a child processes.

### Related information



## Make Utility: -D/-DD

### Command line syntax

-D  
-DD

### Description

With the option **-D** the make utility prints every line of the makefile to standard output as it is read by **tmk**.

With the option **-DD** not only the lines of the makefile are printed but also the lines of the `tmk.mk` file (implicit rules).

### Example

```
tmk -D
```

Each line of the makefile that is read by the make utility is printed to standard output (usually your screen).

### Related information



## Make Utility: **-d/-dd**

### Command line syntax

**-d**  
**-dd**

### Description

With the option **-d** the make utility shows which files are out of date and thus need to be rebuild. The option **-dd** gives more detail than the option **-d**.

### Example

```
tmk -d
```

Shows which files are out of date and rebuilds them.

### Related information



## Make Utility: **-e**

### **Command line syntax**

**-e**

### **Description**

If you use macro definitions, they may overrule the settings of the environment variables.

With the option **-e**, the settings of the environment variables are used even if macros define otherwise.

### **Example**

```
tmk -e
```

The make utility uses the settings of the environment variables regardless of macro definitions.

### **Related information**



## Make Utility: **-err**

### Command line syntax

**-err** *file*

### Description

With this option the make utility redirects error messages and verbose messages to a specified file.

With the option **-s** the make utility only displays error messages.

### Example

```
tmk -err error.txt
```

The make utility writes messages to the file `error.txt`.

### Related information



[Make utility option \*\*-s\*\*](#) (Do not print commands before execution)

## Make Utility: **-f**

### Command line syntax

**-f** *my\_makefile*

### Description

Default the make utility uses the file `makefile` to build your files.

With this option you tell the make utility to use the specified file instead of the file `makefile`. Multiple **-f** options act as if all the makefiles were concatenated in a left-to-right order.

### Example

```
tmk -f mymake
```

The make utility uses the file `mymake` to build your files.

### Related information



## Make Utility: -G

### Command line syntax

**-G** *path*

### Description

Normally you must call the make utility **tmk** from the directory where your makefile and other files are stored.

With the option **-G** you can call the make utility from within another directory. The *path* is the path to the directory where your makefile and other files are stored and can be absolute or relative to your current directory.

### Example

Suppose your makefile and other files are stored in the directory `..\myfiles`. You can call the make utility, for example, as follows:

```
tmk -G ..\myfiles
```

### Related information





## **Make Utility: -i**

### **Command line syntax**

**-i**

### **Description**

When an error occurs during the make process, the make utility exits with a certain exit code.

With the option **-i**, the make utility exits without an error code, even when errors occurred.

### **Example**

```
tmk -i
```

The make utility exits without an error code, even when an error occurs.

### **Related information**



## Make Utility: -K

### **Command line syntax**

-K

### **Description**

With this option the make utility keeps temporary files it creates during the make process. The make utility stores temporary files in the directory that you have specified with the environment variable TMPDIR or in the default 'temp' directory of your system when the TMPDIR environment variable is not specified.

### **Example**

```
tmk -K
```

The make utility preserves all temporary files.

### **Related information**



## Make Utility: **-k**

### **Command line syntax**

**-k**

### **Description**

When during the make process the make utility encounters an error, it stops rebuilding your files.

With the option **-k**, the make utility only stops building the target that produced the error. All other targets defined in the makefile are built.

### **Example**

```
tmk -k
```

If the make utility encounters an error, it stops building the current target but proceeds with the other targets that are defined in the makefile.

### **Related information**



Make utility option **-S** (Undo the effect of **-k**)

## Make Utility: -m

### Command line syntax

`-m file`

### Description

Instead of typing all options on the command line, you can create an option file which contains all options and flags you want to specify. With this option you specify the option file to the make utility.

Use an option file when the command line would exceed the limits of the operating system, or just to store options and save typing.

You can specify the option `-m` multiple times.

### Format of an option file

- Multiple arguments on one line in the option file are allowed.
- To include whitespace in an argument, surround the argument with single or double quotes.
- If you want to use single quotes as part of the argument, surround the argument by double quotes and vice versa:

```
"This has a single quote ' embedded"
```

```
'This has a double quote " embedded'
```

```
'This has a double quote " and a single quote ''' embedded"
```

- When a text line reaches its length limit, use a backslash to continue the line. Whitespace between quotes is preserved.

```
"This is a continuation \  
line"
```

```
-> "This is a continuation line"
```

- It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

### Example

Suppose the file `myoptions` contains the following lines:

```
-k  
-err errors.txt  
test.abs
```

Specify the option file to the make utility:

```
tmk -m myoptions
```

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
tmk -k -err errors.txt test.abs
```

### Related information



## Make Utility: **-n**

### Command line syntax

**-n**

### Description

With this option you tell the make utility to perform a *dry run*. The make utility shows what it would do but does not actually perform these tasks.

This option is for example useful to quickly inspect what would happen if you call the make utility.

### Example

```
tmk -n
```

The make utility does not perform any tasks but displays what it would do if called without the option **-n**.

### Related information



[Make utility option \*\*-s\*\*](#) (Do not print commands before execution)

## Make Utility: -p

### Command line syntax

-p

### Description

Normally, if a command in a target rule in a makefile returns an error or when the target construction is interrupted, the make utility removes that target file. With this option you tell the make utility to make all target files precious. This means that dependency files are never removed.

### Example

```
tmk -p
```

The make utility never removes target dependency files.

### Related information



## Make Utility: -q

### Command line syntax

-q

### Description

With this option the make utility does not perform any tasks but only returns an exit code. A zero status indicates that all target files are up to date, a non-zero status indicates that some or all target files are out of date.

### Example

```
tmk -q
```

The make utility only returns an exit code that indicates whether all target files are up to date or not. It does not rebuild any files.

### Related information



## Make Utility: -r

### Command line syntax

-r

### Description

When you call the make utility, it first reads the implicit rules from the file `tmk.mk`, then it reads the makefile with the rules to build your files. (The file `tmk.mk` is located in the `\etc` directory of the toolset.)

With this option you tell the make utility *not* to read `tmk.mk` and to rely fully on the make rules in the makefile.

### Example

```
tmk -r
```

The make utility does not read the implicit make rules in `tmk.mk`.

### Related information





## Make Utility: -S

### Command line syntax

-S

### Description

With this option you cancel the effect of the option **-k**. This is only necessary in a recursive make where the option **-k** might be inherited from the top-level make via MAKEFLAGS or if you set the option **-k** in the environment variable MAKEFLAGS.

### Example

```
tmk -S
```

The effect of the option **-k** is cancelled so the make utility stops with the make process after it encounters an error.

The option **-k** in this example may have been set with the environment variable MAKEFLAGS or in a recursive call to **tmk** in the makefile.

### Related information



[Make utility option -k](#) (On error, abandon the work for the current target only)

## Make Utility: **-s**

### Command line syntax

**-s**

### Description

With this option you tell the make utility to perform its tasks without printing the commands it executes. Error messages are normally printed.

### Example

```
tmk -s
```

The make utility rebuilds your files but does not print the commands it executes during the make process.

### Related information



[Make utility option \*\*-n\*\*](#) (Perform a dry run)

## Make Utility: -t

### Command line syntax

-t

### Description

With this option you tell the make utility to *touch* the target files, bringing them up to date, rather than performing the rules to rebuild them.

### Example

```
tmk -t
```

The make utility updates out-of-date files by giving them a new date and time stamp. The files are not actually rebuilt.

### Related information



## Make Utility: -time

### **Command line syntax**

-time

### **Description**

With this option you tell the make utility to display the current date and time on standard output.

### **Example**

```
tmk -time
```

The make utility displays the current date and time and updates out-of-date files.

### **Related information**



## **Make Utility: -V**

### **Command line syntax**

**-V**

### **Description**

Display version information. The make utility ignores all other options or input files.

### **Example**

```
tmk -V
```

The make utility displays the version information but does not perform any tasks.

### **Related information**



## Make Utility: -W

### Command line syntax

`-W target`

### Description

With this option the make utility considers the specified target file always as up to date and will not rebuild it.

### Example

```
tmk -W test.abs
```

The make utility rebuilds out of date targets in the makefile except the file `test.abs` which is considered now as up to date.

### Related information



## **Make Utility: -x**

### **Command line syntax**

**-x**

### **Description**

With this option the make utility shows extended error messages. Extended error messages give more detailed information about the exit status of the make utility after errors. Altium Designer uses this option for the graphical version of make.

### **Example**

```
tmk -x
```

If errors occur, the make utility gives extended information.

### **Related information**



## 2.5 Librarian Options

The librarian **tlb** is a tool to build library files and it offers the possibility to replace, extract and remove modules from an existing library.

You can only call the librarian from the command line. The invocation syntax is:

```
tlb key_option [sub_option...] library [object_file]
```

This section describes all options for the make utility. Suboptions can only be used in combination with certain key options. Keyoptions and their suboptions are therefor described together. The miscellaneous options can always be used and are also described separately.

The librarian is a command line tool so there are no equivalent options in Altium Designer.

Description	Option	Suboption
<b>Main functions (key options)</b>		
Replace or add an object module	<b>-r</b>	<b>-a -b -c -u -v</b>
Extract an object module from the library	<b>-x</b>	<b>-o -v</b>
Delete object module from library	<b>-d</b>	<b>-v</b>
Move object module to another position	<b>-m</b>	<b>-a -b -v</b>
Print a table of contents of the library	<b>-t</b>	<b>-s0 -s1</b>
Print object module to standard output	<b>-p</b>	
<b>Suboptions</b>		
Append or move new modules after existing module <i>name</i>	<b>-a name</b>	
Append or move new modules before existing module <i>name</i>	<b>-b name</b>	
Create library without notification if library does not exist	<b>-c</b>	
Preserve last-modified date from the library	<b>-o</b>	
Print symbols in library modules	<b>-s{0 1}</b>	
Replace only newer modules	<b>-u</b>	
Verbose	<b>-v</b>	
<b>Miscellaneous</b>		
Display options	<b>-?</b>	
Display version header	<b>-V</b>	
Read options from <i>file</i>	<b>-f file</b>	
Suppress warnings above level <i>n</i>	<b>-wn</b>	

Table 2-1: Overview of librarian options and suboptions



## Librarian: -?

### Command line syntax

-?

### Description

Displays an overview of all command line options.

### Example

The following invocations display a list of the available command line options:

```
tlb -?  
tlb
```

### Related information



## Librarian: **-d**

### **Command line syntax**

**-d** [-v]

### **Description**

Delete the specified object modules from a library. With the suboption **-v** the librarian shows which files are removed.

**-v**     Verbose: the librarian shows which files are removed.

### **Example**

```
tlb -d mylib.lib obj1.obj obj2.obj
```

The librarian deletes `obj1.obj` and `obj2.obj` from the library `mylib.lib`.

```
tlb -d -v mylib.lib obj1.obj obj2.obj
```

The librarian deletes `obj1.obj` and `obj2.obj` from the library `mylib.lib` and displays which files are removed.

### **Related information**



## Librarian: -f

### Command line syntax

**-f** *file*

### Description

Instead of typing all options on the command line, you can create an option file which contains all options and flags you want to specify. With this option you specify the option file to the librarian **tlb**.

Use an option file when the command line would exceed the limits of the operating system, or just to store options and save typing.

Option files can also be generated on the fly, for example by the make utility. You can specify the option **-f** multiple times.

Format of an option file

- Multiple arguments on one line in the option file are allowed.
- To include whitespace in an argument, surround the argument with single or double quotes.
- If you want to use single quotes as part of the argument, surround the argument by double quotes and vice versa:

```
"This has a single quote ' embedded"
```

```
'This has a double quote " embedded'
```

```
'This has a double quote " and a single quote ''' embedded"
```

- When a text line reaches its length limit, use a \ to continue the line. Whitespace between quotes is preserved.

```
"This is a continuation \  
line"
```

```
-> "This is a continuation line"
```

- It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

### Example

Suppose the file `myoptions` contains the following lines:

```
-x mylib.lib obj1.obj  
-w5
```

Specify the option file to the librarian:

```
tlb -f myoptions
```

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
tlb -x mylib.lib obj1.obj -w5
```

## Librarian: -m

### Command line syntax

**-m** [**-a** *posname*] [**-b** *posname*]

### Description

Move the specified object modules to another position in the library.

The ordering of members in a library can make a difference in how programs are linked if a symbol is defined in more than one member.

Default, the specified members are moved to the end of the archive. Use the suboptions **-a** or **-b** to move them to a specified place instead.

**-a** *posname*      Move the specified object module(s) after the existing module *posname*.

**-b** *posname*      Move the specified object module(s) before the existing module *posname*.

### Example

Suppose the library `mylib.lib` contains the following objects (see option **-t**):

```
obj1.obj  
obj2.obj  
obj3.obj
```

To move `obj1.obj` to the end of `mylib.lib`:

```
tlb -m mylib.lib obj1.obj
```

To move `obj3.obj` just before `obj2.obj`:

```
tlb -m -b obj3.obj mylib.lib obj2.obj
```

The library `mylib.lib` after these two invocations now looks like:

```
obj3.obj  
obj2.obj  
obj1.obj
```

### Related information



Librarian option **-t** (Print library contents)

## Librarian: -p

### Command line syntax

-p

### Description

Print the specified object module(s) in the library to standard output.

This option is only useful when you redirect or pipe the output to other files or tools that serve your own purposes. Normally you do not need this option.

### Example

```
tlb -p mylib.lib obj1.obj > file.obj
```

The librarian prints the file `obj1.obj` to standard output where it is redirected to the file `file.obj`. The effect of this example is very similar to extracting a file from the library but in this case the 'extracted' file gets another name.

### Related information



## Librarian: -r

### Command line syntax

`-r [-a posname] [-b posname] [-c] [-u] [-v]`

### Description

You can use the option `-r` for several purposes:

- Adding new objects to the library
- Replacing objects in the library with the same object of a newer date
- Creating a new library

The option `-r` normally *adds* a new module to the library. However, if the library already contains a module with the specified name, the existing module is *replaced*. If you specify a library that does not exist, the librarian *creates* a new library with the specified name.

If you add a module to the library without specifying the suboption `-a` or `-b`, the specified module is added at the end of the archive. Use the suboptions `-a` or `-b` to insert them to a specified place instead.

`-a posname` Add the specified object module(s) after the existing module *posname*.

`-b posname` Add the specified object module(s) before the existing module *posname*.

`-c` Create a new library without checking whether it already exists. If the library already exists, it is overwritten.

`-u` Insert the specified object module only if it is newer than the module in the library.

`-v` Verbose: the librarian shows which files are removed.



The suboptions `-a` or `-b` have no effect when an object is added to the library.

### Examples

Suppose the library `mylib.lib` contains the following objects (see option `-t`):

```
obj1.obj
```

To add `obj2.obj` to the end of `mylib.lib`:

```
tlb -r mylib.lib obj2.obj
```

To insert `obj3.obj` just before `obj2.obj`:

```
tlb -r -b obj2.obj mylib.lib obj3.obj
```

The library `mylib.lib` after these two invocations now looks like:

```
obj1.obj
obj3.obj
obj2.obj
```

### Creating a new library

To *create a new library file*, add an object file and specify a library that does not yet exist:

```
tlb -r obj1.obj newlib.lib
```

The librarian creates the library `newlib.lib` and adds the object `obj1.obj` to it.

To *create a new library file and overwrite an existing library*, add an object file and specify an existing library with the supoption `-c`:

```
tlb -r -c obj1.obj mylib.lib
```

The librarian overwrites the library `mylib.lib` and adds the object `obj1.obj` to it. The new library `mylib.lib` only contains `obj1.obj`.

***Related information***



[Librarian option -t](#) (Print library contents)

## Librarian: -t

### Command line syntax

**-t** [-s0|-s1]

### Description

Print a table of contents of the library to standard out. With the suboption **-s** the librarian displays all symbols per object file.

**-s0** Displays per object the library in which it resides, the name of the object itself and all symbols in the object.

**-s1** Displays only the symbols of all object files in the library.

### Example

```
tlb -t mylib.lib
```

The librarian prints a list of all object modules in the library `mylib.lib`.

```
tlb -t -s0 mylib.lib
```

The librarian prints per object all symbols in the library. This looks like:

```
prolog.obj
  symbols:
mylib.lib:prolog.obj:___Qabi_callee_save
mylib.lib:prolog.obj:___Qabi_callee_restore
div16.obj
  symbols:
mylib.lib:div16.obj:___udiv16
mylib.lib:div16.obj:___div16
mylib.lib:div16.obj:___urem16
mylib.lib:div16.obj:___rem16
```

### Related information





## **Librarian: -V**

### **Command line syntax**

**-V**

### **Description**

Display version information. The librarian ignores all other options or input files.

### **Example**

```
tlb -V
```

The librarian displays version information but does not perform any tasks.

### **Related information**



## Librarian: **-w**

### **Command line syntax**

**-wlevel**

### **Description**

With this suboption you tell the librarian to suppress all warnings above the specified level. The level is a number between 0 – 9.

The level of a message is printed between parentheses after the warning number. If you do not use the **-w** option, the default warning level is 8.

### **Example**

To suppresses warnings above level 5:

```
tlb -x -w5 mylib.lib obj1.obj
```

### **Related information**



## Librarian: -x

### Command line syntax

**-x** [-o] [-v]

### Description

Extract an existing module from the library.

- o** Give the extracted object module the same date as the last-modified date that was recorded in the library.  
Without this suboption it receives the last-modified date of the moment it is extracted.
- v** Verbose: the librarian shows which files are extracted.

### Examples

To extract the file obj1.obj from the library mylib.lib:

```
tlb -x mylib.lib obj1.obj
```

If you do not specify an object module, all object modules are extracted:

```
tlb -x mylib.lib
```

### Related information







## 3 List File Formats

### Summary

This chapter describes the format of the assembler list file and the linker map file.

### 3.1 Assembler List File Format

The assembler list file is an additional output file of the assembler that contains information about the generated code.

The list file consists of a page header and a source listing.

#### Page header

The page header is repeated on every page:

```
TASKING target Assembler vx.yrz Build nnn SN 00000000
Title
Page 1

ADDR CODE      CYCLES  LINE SOURCE LINE
```

The first line contains version information.

The second line can contain a title which you can specify with the assembler directive `.TITLE` and always contains a page number. With the assembler directives `.LIST/ .NOLIST` and `.PAGE`, and with the [assembler option `-Lflag \(--list-format\)`](#) you can format the list file.



See Section 1.8.2, [Assembler Directives](#) in Chapter *Assembly Language* and Section 2.1, [Assembler Options](#) in Chapter *Tools Options*.

The fourth line contains the headings of the columns for the source listing.

#### Source listing

The following is a sample part of a listing. An explanation of the different columns follows below.

```
ADDR CODE      CYCLES  LINE SOURCE LINE
                        1      ; Module start
                        .
                        .
0009 0Crr       1   11   17      movlw  #__2_ini
000A 0028       1   12   18      movwf   GPR0
000B 09rr       2   14   19      gcall   _printf
                        .
                        .
0000                        38      .ds     2
|  RESERVED
0001
```

The meaning of the different columns is:

**ADDR** This column contains the memory address. The address is a hexadecimal number that represents the offset from the beginning of a relocatable section or the absolute address for an absolute section. The address only appears on lines that generate object code.

CODE	This is the object code generated by the assembler for this source line, displayed in hexadecimal format. The displayed code need not be the same as the generated code that is entered in the object module. The code can also be relocatable code. In this case the letter 'r' is printed for the relocatable code part in the listing. For lines that allocate space, the code field contains the text "RESERVED". For lines that initialize a buffer, the code field lists one value followed by the word "REPEATS".
CYCLES	The first number in this column is the number of instruction cycles needed to execute the instruction(s) as generated in the CODE field. The second number is the accumulated cycle count of this section.
LINE	This column contains the line number. This is a decimal number indicating each input line, starting from 1 and incrementing with each source line.
SOURCE LINE	This column contains the source text. This is a copy of the source line from the assembly source file.



For the `.SET` and `.EQU` directives the ADDR and CODE columns do not apply. The symbol value is listed instead.

### **Related information**



See section 2.6, [Generating a List File](#), in Chapter *Using the Assembler* of the user's manual for more information on how to generate a list file and specify the amount of list file information.

## 3.2 Linker Map File Format

The linker map file is an additional output file of the linker that shows how the linker has mapped the sections and symbols from the various object files (.obj) to output sections. The locate part shows the absolute position of each section. External symbols are listed per space with their absolute address, both sorted on symbol and sorted on address.

With the linker option `--map-file-format` (map file formatting) you can specify which parts of the map file you want to see.

### Example (part of) linker map file

```
***** Processed Files Part *****
+-----+
| File      | From archive | Symbol causing the extraction |
|=====|
| hello.obj |              |                               |
+-----+

***** Link Part *****
+-----+
| [in] File | [in] Section | [in] Size | [out] Offset | [out] Section | [out] Size |
|=====|
| hello.obj | __GPRO       | 0x00000001 | 0x00000000   | __GPRO       | 0x00000001 |
|-----|
| hello.obj | code        | 0x0000000d | 0x00000000   | code        | 0x0000000d |
|-----|
| hello.obj | data        | 0x00000006 | 0x00000000   | data        | 0x00000006 |
+-----+

***** Module Local Symbols Part *****

* Scope ".\hello.obj"
=====
+-----+
| Name      | Address      | Space      |
|=====|
+-----+

***** Cross Reference Part *****

+-----+
| Definition file | Definition section | Symbol      | Referenced in |
|=====|
+-----+

* Undefined symbols
=====
+-----+
| Symbol | Referenced in |
|=====|
| __init | hello.obj     |
+-----+

***** Locate Result *****

* Task entry address
=====

* Sections
=====

+ Space c165x:c165x:data
+-----+
| Chip | Group | Section          | Size (MAU) | Space addr | Chip addr |
|=====|
| -    |      | stack_data@_printf | 0x00000001 | 0x00000000 |           |
| -    |      | data               | 0x00000006 | 0x00000000 |           |
| -    |      | data               | 0x0000000b | 0x00000000 |           |
| -    |      | __GPRO             | 0x00000001 | 0x00000000 |           |
+-----+
```

## TSK165x Embedded Tools Reference

\* Symbols (sorted on name)

Name		
Name	Address	Space
__Exit	0x0000000c	c165x:c165x:code
_main	0x00000000	

\* Symbols (sorted on address)

Address		
Address	Name	Space
0x00000000	_main	c165x:c165x:code
0x0000000c	__Exit	

\*\*\*\*\* Memory Part \*\*\*\*\*

\* Address range usage at space level

Name						
Name	Total	Used	%	Free	%	> free gap %
c165x:c165x:bit	0x00000100	0x00000000	0	0x00000100	100	0x00000100 100
c165x:c165x:code	0x00000800	0x00000000	0	0x00000800	100	0x00000800 100
c165x:c165x:data	0x00000080	0x00000000	0	0x00000080	100	0x00000080 100

\* Address range usage at memory level

Name						
Name	Total	Used	%	Free	%	> free gap %
xram	0x00000080	0x00000000	0	0x00000080	100	0x00000080 100
xrom	0x00000080	0x00000000	0	0x00000080	100	0x00000080 100

\*\*\*\*\* Linker Script File Part \*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\* Locate Rule Part \*\*\*\*\*

Address space			
Address space	Type	Properties	Sections
c165x:c165x:code	absolute	0x00000000	code
c165x:c165x:data	absolute	0x00000008	__GPR0
c165x:c165x:code	address range size	(512, 512)	code
c165x:c165x:data	address range size	(16, 16)	stack_data@_printf
c165x:c165x:data	address range size	(16, 16)	data

The meaning of the different parts is:

### Processed Files Part

This part of the map file shows all processed files. This also includes object files that are extracted from a library, with the symbol that led to the extraction.

### Link Part

This part of the map file shows per object file how the link phase has mapped the sections from the various object files (.obj) to output sections.

[in] File	The name of an input object file.
[in] Section	A section name from the input object file.
[in] Size	The size of the input section.
[out] Offset	The offset relative to the start of the output section.
[out] Section	The resulting output section name.
[out] Size	The size of the output section.



### Module Local Symbols Part

This part of the map file shows a table for each local scope within an object file. Each table has three columns, 1 the symbol name, 2 the address of the symbol and 3 the space where the symbol resides in. The table is sorted on symbol name within each space.

By default this part is not shown in the map file. You have to turn this part on manually with [linker option](#) `--map-file-format=+statics` (module local symbols).

### Cross Reference Part

This part of the map file lists all symbols defined in the object modules and for each symbol the object modules that contain a reference to the symbol are shown. Also, symbols that remain undefined are shown.

### Locate Part: Section translation

This part of the map file shows the absolute position of each section in the absolute object file. It is organized per address space, memory chip and group and sorted on space address.

+ Space	The names of the address spaces as defined in the linker script file (*.lsl). The names are constructed of the derivative name followed by a colon ':', the core name, another colon ':' and the space name.
Chip	The names of the memory chips as defined in the linker script file (*.lsl) in the memory definitions.
Group	Sections can be ordered in groups. These are the names of the groups as defined in the linker script file (*.lsl) with the keyword group in the section_layout definition. The name that is displayed is the name of the deepest nested group.
Section	The name of the section. Names within square brackets [ ] will be copied during initialization from ROM to the corresponding section name in RAM.
Size (MAU)	The size of the section in minimum addressable units.
Space addr	The absolute address of the section in the address space.
Chip addr	The absolute offset of the section from the start of a memory chip.

### Locate Part: Symbol translation

This part of the map file lists all external symbols per address space name, both sorted on address and sorted on symbol name.

Name	The name of the symbol.
Address	The absolute address of the symbol in the address space.
Space	The names of the address spaces as defined in the linker script file (*.lsl). The names are constructed of the derivative name followed by a colon ':', the core name, another colon ':' and the space name.

### Memory Part

This part of the map file shows the memory usage in totals and percentages for spaces and chips. The largest free block of memory per space and per chip is also shown.

### Linker Script File Part

This part of the map file shows the processor and memory information of the linker script file.

By default this part is not shown in the map file. You have to turn this part on manually with [linker option](#) `--map-file-format=+lsl` (processor and memory info). You can print this information to a separate file with [linker option](#) `--lsl-dump`.

### Locate Rule Part

This part of the map file shows the rules the linker uses to locate sections.

Address space	The names of the address spaces as defined in the linker script file (*.lsl). The names are constructed of the derivative name followed by a colon ':', the core name, another colon ':' and the space name.
---------------	--

Type	The rule type:						
ordered/contiguous/clustered/unrestricted	Specifies how sections are grouped. By default, a group is 'unrestricted' which means that the linker has total freedom to place the sections of the group in the address space.						
absolute	The section must be located at the address shown in the Properties column.						
address range	The section must be located in the union of the address ranges shown in the Properties column; end addresses are not included in the range.						
address range size	The sections must be located in some address range with size not larger than shown in the Properties column; the second number in that field is the alignment requirement for the address range.						
ballooned	After locating all sections, the largest remaining gap in the space is used completely for the stack and/or heap.						
Properties	The contents depends on the Type column.						
Sections	<p>The sections to which the rule applies; restrictions between sections are shown in this column:</p> <table> <tr> <td>&lt;</td><td>ordered</td></tr> <tr> <td> </td><td>contiguous</td></tr> <tr> <td>+</td><td>clustered</td></tr> </table> <p>For contiguous sections, the linker uses the section order as shown here. Clustered sections can be located in any relative order.</p>	<	ordered		contiguous	+	clustered
<	ordered						
	contiguous						
+	clustered						

### Related information



Section 3.9, [Generating a Map File](#), in Chapter *Using the Linker* of the user's manual.  
[Linker option --map-file](#) (Generate map file)



## 4 Object File Formats

### Summary

This chapter describes the formats of several object files.

### 4.1 IEEE-695 Format

The IEEE-695 standard describes MUFOM: Microprocessor Universal Format for Object Modules. It defines a target independent storage standard for object files. However, this standard does not describe how symbolic debug information should be encoded according to that standard. Symbolic debug information can be a part of an object file. A debugger which reads an object file uses the symbolic debug information to obtain knowledge about the relation between the executable code and the origination high-level language source files. Since the IEEE-695 standard does not describe the representation of debug information, working implementations of this standard show vendor specific and microprocessor specific solutions for this area.

TIOF, which stands for Target Independent Object Format, is specified as a MUFOM based standard including the representation of symbolic debug information for high-level languages, without introducing the microprocessor dependent solutions.

Since TIOF and IEEE-695 both use the MUFOM concept as their basis both formats are very similar to each other.

#### 4.1.1 Command Language Concept

Most object formats are record oriented: there are one or more section headers at a fixed position in the file which describe how many sections are present. A section header contains information like start address, file offset, etc. The contents of the section is in some data part, which can only be processed after the header has been read. So the tool that reads such an object uses implicit assumptions how to process such a file. Seeking through the file to get those records which are relevant is usual.

MUFOM ( IEEE-695 ) uses a different approach. It is designed as a command language which steers the linker and object reader in the debugger.

An assembler or compiler may create an object module where most of the data contained in it is relocatable. The next phase in the translation process is linking several object modules into one new object module. A relocatable object uses relocation expressions at places where the absolute values are not yet known. An expression evaluator in the linker transforms the relocation expressions into absolute values.

Finally the object is ready for loading into memory. Since an object file is transformed by several processes, MUFOM implements an object file as a sequence of commands which steers this transformation process.

These commands are created, executed or copied by one of five processes which act on a MUFOM object file:

1. Creation process  
Creation of the object file by an assembler or compiler. The assembler or compiler tells other MUFOM processes what to do, by emitting commands generated from assembly source text or a high-level language.
2. Linkage process  
Linking of several object modules into one module resolving external references by renaming X variables into I variables, and by generating new commands (assigning of R variables).
3. Relocation process  
Relocation, giving all sections an absolute address by assigning their L variable.
4. Expression evaluation process  
Evaluation of loader expressions, generated in one of the three previously mentioned MUFOM processes.
5. Loader process  
Loading the absolute memory image.

The last four processes are in fact command interpreters: the assembler writes an object file which is basically a large sequence of instructions for the linker. For example, instead of writing the contents of a section as a sequence of bytes at a specific position in the file, IEEE-695 defines a load command, LR, which instructs the linker to load a number of bytes. The LR command specifies the number of MAUs (minimum addressable unit) that will be relocated, followed by the actual data. This data can be a number of absolute bytes, or an expression which must be evaluated by the linker.

Transforming relocation expressions into new expressions or absolute data and combining sections is the actual linkage process.

It is possible that one or more of the above MUFOM processes are combined in one tool. For instance, the linker is built from process 2, 3 and 4 above.

### 4.1.2 Notational Conventions

The following conventions are used in this appendix:

	select one of the items listed between ' '
" "	literal characters are between " "
[ ]+	optional item repeats one time or more
[ ]?	optional item repeats zero times or one time
[ ]*	optional item repeats zero times or more
::=	can be read as "is defined as"

### 4.1.3 Expressions

An expression in an IEEE-695 file is a combination of variables, operators and absolute data.

The variable name always starts with a non-hexadecimal letter (G...Z), immediately followed by an optional hexadecimal number. The first non-hexadecimal letter gives the class of the variable. Reading an object file you encounter the following variables:

<b>G</b> -	Start address of a program. If not assigned this address defaults to the address of low-level symbol <b>_start</b> .
<b>I</b> -	An I variable represents a global symbol in an object module.  The I variable is assigned an expression which is to be made available to other modules for the purpose of linkage edition. The name of an I variable is always composed of the letter 'I', followed by a hexadecimal number. An I variable is created only by an NI command.
<b>L</b> -	Start address of a section. This variable is only used for absolute sections. The 'L' is followed by a section index, which is an hexadecimal number. L variables are created by an assignment command, but the section index must have been defined by an ST command.
<b>N</b> -	Name of internal symbol. This variable is used to assign values of local symbols, or, to build complex types for use by a high-level language debugger, or for inter-modular type checking during linkage. The N variable is created with a NN command.
<b>P</b> -	Program pointer per section. This variable always contains the current address of the target memory location. The P variable is followed by a section index, which is a hexadecimal number. The section index must have been defined with an ST command (section type command). The variable is created after its first assignment.
<b>R</b> -	The R type variable is a relocation reference for a particular section. All references to addresses in this section must be made relative to the R variable. Linking is accomplished by assigning a new value to R. The R variable consists of the letter 'R', followed by a section index, which is a hexadecimal number. The section index must have been defined with an ST command. The default value of an (unassigned) R variable is 0.
<b>S</b> -	The S type variable is the section size (in MAUs) for a section. There is one S variable per section. The 'S' is followed by a section index. An S variable is created by its first assignment.
<b>W</b> -	Work variable. This type of variable can be used to assign values to, which can be used in following MUFOM commands. They serve the purpose of maintaining values in a workspace without any additional meaning. A work variable consists of the letter 'W' followed by a hexadecimal number. W variables are created by their first assignment.

**X** – An X type variable refers to an external reference. X-variables cannot have a value assigned to it. An X variable consists of the letter 'X' followed by a hexadecimal number.

The MUFOM language uses the following data types to form expressions:

```
digit      ::= "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"
hex_letter ::= "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F"
hex_digit  ::= digit | hex_letter
hex_number ::= [ hex_digit ]+
nonhex_letter ::= "G" | "H" | "I" | "J" | "K" | "L" | "M" | "N" | "O" | "P" | "Q" | "R" | "S" | "T" | "U" | "V" |
                "W" | "X" | "Y" | "Z"
letter     ::= hex_letter | nonhex_letter
alpha_num  ::= letter | digit
identifier ::= letter [ alpha_num ]*
character  ::= 'value valid within chosen character set'
char_string_length ::= hex_digit hex_digit
char_string  ::= char_string_length [ character ]*
```

The numeric value specified in 'char\_string\_length' should be followed by an equal number of characters.

Expressions may be formed out of immediate numbers and MUFOM variables. The MUFOM processes 2 to 4, which form the linker, contain expression evaluators which parse and calculate the values for the expressions. If a MUFOM process cannot calculate the absolute value of an expression, because the values of the variable are not yet known, it copies the expression (with modifications) into the output file.

Expression are coded in reverse Polish notation. (The operator follows the operands.)

```
expression ::= boolean_function | one_operand_function |
              two_operand_function | three_operand_function |
              four_operand_function | conditional_expr | hex_number |
              MUFOM_variable
```

#### 4.1.3.1 Functions without Operands

@F : false function

@T : true function

```
boolean_function ::= "@F" | "@T"
```

The false and true function produce a boolean result false or true which may be used in logical expressions. Both functions do not have operands.

#### 4.1.3.2 Monadic Functions

Monadic functions have one operand which precedes the function.

```
one_operand_function ::= operand "," monop
operand               ::= expression
monop                 ::= "@ABS" | "@NEG" | "@NOT" | "@ISDEF"
```

@ABS: returns the absolute value of an integer operand

@NEG: returns the negative value of an integer operand

@NOT: returns the negation of a boolean operand or the one's complement value if the operand is an integer

@ISDEF: returns the logical true value if all variable in an expression are defined, return false otherwise.

### 4.1.3.3 Dyadic Functions and Operators

Dyadic functions and operators have two operands which precede the operator or function.

two\_operand\_function ::= operand1 "," operand2 "," dyadop

operand1 ::= expression

operand2 ::= expression

dyadop ::= "@AND" | "@MAX" | "@MIN" | "@MOD" | "@OR" | "@XOR" | "+" | "-" | "/" | "\*" | "<" | ">" | "=" | "#"

**@AND:** returns boolean true/false result of logical 'and' operation on operands, when both operands are logical values. When both operands are not logical values the bitwise and is performed.

**@MAX:** compares both operands arithmetically and returns the largest value.

**@MIN:** compares both operands arithmetically and returns the smallest value.

**@MOD:** returns the modulo result of the division of operand1 by operand2. The result is undefined if either operand is negative, or if operand2 is zero.

**@OR:** returns boolean true/false result of logical 'or' operation on operands, when both operands are logical values. When both operands are no logical values the bitwise and is performed.

**+, -, \*, /:** These are the arithmetic operators for addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. The result is an integer. For division the result is undefined if operand2 equals zero. The result of a division rounds toward zero.

**<, >, =, #:** These are operators for the following logical relations: 'less than', 'greater than', 'equals', 'is unequal'. The result is true or false.

### 4.1.3.4 MUFOM Variables

The meaning of the MUFOM variable is explained in section 4.1.3. The following syntax rules apply for the MUFOM variables:

MUFOM\_variable ::= MUFOM\_var | MUFOM\_var\_num | MUFOM\_var\_optnum

MUFOM\_var ::= "G"

MUFOM\_var\_num ::= "I" | "N" | "W" | "X" | hex\_number

MUFOM\_var\_optnum ::= "L" | "P" | "R" | "S" | [ hex\_number ]?

### 4.1.3.5 @INS and @EXT Operator

The @INS operator inserts a bit string.

four\_operand\_function ::= operand1 "," operand2 "," operand3 "," operand4 "," @INS

operand2 is inserted in operand1 starting at position operand3, and ending at position operand4.

The @EXT operator extracts a bit string.

three\_operand\_function ::= operand1 "," operand2 "," operand3 "," @EXT

A bit string is extracted from operand1 starting at position operand2 and ending at position operand3.

### 4.1.3.6 Conditional Expressions

conditional\_expr ::= err\_expr | if\_else\_expr

err\_expr ::= value "," condition "," err\_num "," "@ERR"

value ::= expression

condition ::= expression

err\_num ::= expression

if\_else\_expr ::= condition "," "@IF" "," expression "," "@ELSE" "," expression "," "@END"

## 4.1.4 MUFOM Commands

### 4.1.4.1 Module Level Commands

At module level there are four commands: one command to start and one to end a module, one command to set the date and time of creation of the module, and one command to specify address formats.

#### **MB Command**

The MB command is the first command in a module. It specifies the target machine configuration and an optional command with the module name.

```
MB_command ::= "MB" machine_identifier [ "," module_name ]? "."
```

Example:     MB c165x.

#### **ME Command**

The module end command is the last command in an object file. It defines the end of the object module.

```
ME_command ::= "ME."
```

#### **DT Command**

The DT command sets the date and time of creation of an object module.

```
DT_command ::= "DT" [ digit ]* "."
```

Example:     DT19930120120432.

The format of display of the date and time is "YYYYMMDDHHMMSS":

4 digits for the year, 2 digits for the month, 2 digits for the day, 2 digits for the hour, 2 digits for the minutes and 2 digits for the seconds.

#### **AD Command**

The AD command specifies the address format of the target execution environment.

```
AD_command       ::=    "AD" bits_per_MAU [ "," MAU_per_address [ "," order ]? ]?
```

```
MAU_per_address  ::=    hex_number
```

```
bits_per_MAU     ::=    hex_number
```

```
order            ::=    "L" | "M"
```

MAU stands for minimum addressable unit. This is target processor dependant.

L   means least significant byte at lowest address ( little endian )

M   means most significant byte at lowest address ( big endian )

Example:

```
AD8,2,L.
```

Specifies a 2-byte addressable 8-bit processor running in little endian mode.

### 4.1.4.2 Comment and Checksum Command

The comment command offers the possibility to store information in an object module about the object module and the translators that created it. The comment may be used to record the file name of the source file of the object module or the version number of the translator that created it. Because the standard supports several layers each of which has its own revision number an object module may contain several comment commands which specify which revision of the standard has been used to create the module. The contents of a comment is not prescribed by the standard and thus it is implementation defined how a MUFOM process handles a comment command.

```
CO_command       ::= "CO" [comment_level]? "," comment_text "."
```

```
comment_level    ::= hex_number
```

comment\_text ::= char\_string

The comment levels 0 – 6 are reserved to pass information about the revision number of the layers in this standard.

The checksum command starts and checks the checksum calculation of an object module.

#### 4.1.4.3 Sections

A section is the smallest unit of code or data that can be controlled separately. Each section has a unique number which is introduced at the first section begin (SB) command. The contents of a section may follow its introduction. A section ends at the next SB command with a number different from the current number. A section resumes at an SB command with a number that has been introduced before.

##### **SB Command**

SB\_command ::= "SB" hex\_number "."

The maximum number of sections in an object module is implementation defined.

##### **ST Command**

The ST command specifies the type of a section.

ST\_command ::= "ST" section\_number [ "," section\_type ]\* [ "," section\_name ]? "."

section\_type ::= letter

section\_name ::= char\_string

A section can be named or unnamed. If section\_name is omitted a section is unnamed. A section can be relocatable or absolute. If the section start address is an absolute number the section is called absolute. If the section start address is not yet known, the section is called relocatable. In relocatable sections all addresses are specified relative to the relocation base of that section. The relocation phase of the linker may map the relocation base of a section onto a fixed address.

During linkage edition the section name and the section attributes identify a section and thus the actions to be taken. If a section is defined in several modules, the linkage editor must determine how to act on sections with the same name. This can be either one of the following strategies:

- several sections are to be joined into a single one
- several sections are to be overlapped
- sections are not to coexist

A section type gives additional information to the linkage editor about the section, which may be used to layout a section in memory. Section type information is encoded with letters, which may be combined in one ST command. Some combinations of letters are invalid or may be meaningless.

letter	meaning	class	explanation
A	absolute	access	section has absolute address assigned to corresponding L-variable
R	read only	access	no write access to this section
W	writable	access	section may be read and written
X	executable	access	section contains executable code
Z	zero page	access	if target has zero page or short addressable page Z-section map into it
Ynum	addressing mode	access	section must be located in addressing mode num
B	blank	access	section must be initialized to '0' (cleared)
F	not filled	access	section is not filled or cleared (scratch)
I	initialize	access	section must be initialized in rom
E	equal	overlap	if sections in two modules have different length an error must be raised
M	max	overlap	Use largest value as section size
U	unique	overlap	The section name must be unique



letter	meaning	class	explanation
C	cumulative	overlap	Concatenate sections if they appear in several modules. The section alignment for partial section must be preserved
O	overlay	overlap	sections with the name <i>name@func</i> must be combined to one section <i>name</i> , according to the rules for <i>func</i> obtained from the call graph
S	separate	overlap	multiple sections can have the same name and they may relocated at unrelated addresses
N	now	when	section is located before normal sections (without N or P)
P	postpone	when	section is located after normal sections (without N or P)

Table 4-1: Section types

### SA Command

```
SA_command ::= "SA" section_number "," [MAU_boundary ]? [ "," page_size ]? "."
MAU_boundary ::= expression
page_size ::= expression
```

The MAU boundary value forces the relocater to align a section on the number of MAUs specified. If page\_size is present the relocater checks that the section does not exceed a page boundary limit when it is relocated.

### 4.1.4.4 Symbolic Name Declaration and Type Definition

#### NI Command

The NI command defines an internal symbol. An internal symbol is visible outside the module. Thus it may resolve an undefined external in another module.

```
NI_command ::= "N" I_variable "," char_string "."
```

The NI\_command must precede any reference to the I\_variable in a module. There may not be more than one I\_variable with the same name or number.

#### NX Command

The NX command defines an external symbol which is undefined in the current module. The NX command must precede all occurrences of the corresponding X variable.

```
NX_command ::= "N" X_variable "," char_string "."
```

The unresolved reference corresponding to an NX-command can be resolved by an internal symbol definition ( NI\_command ) in another module.

#### NN Command

The NN command defines a local name which may be used for defining a name of a local symbol in a module or a name in a type definition.

A name defined with an NN command is not visible outside the scope of the module. The NN command must precede all occurrences of the corresponding N variable.

```
NN_command ::= "N" N_variable "," char_string "."
```

#### AT Command

The attribute command may be used to define debugging related information of a symbol, such as the symbol type number. Level 2 of the standard does not prescribe the contents of the optional fields of the AT command. The language dependent layer (level 3) describes how these fields can be used to pass high-level symbol information with the AT command.

```
AT_command ::= "AT" variable "," type_table_entry [ "," lex_level [ "," hex_number ]* ]? "."
variable ::= I_variable | N_variable | X_variable
type_table_entry ::= hex_number
```

lex\_level ::= hex\_number

The type\_table entry is a type number introduced with a type command (TY). References to type numbers in the AT command may precede the definition of the type in the TY command.

The meaning of the lex\_level field is defined at layer 3 or higher. The same applies to the optional hex\_number fields.

### **TY Command**

The TY-command defines a new type table entry. The type number introduced by the type command can be seen as a reference index to this type. The TY-command defines the relation between the newly introduced type and other types that are defined in other places in the object module. It also establishes a relation between a new type index and symbols (N\_variable).

TY\_command ::= "TY" type\_table\_entry [ "," parameter ]+ "."

type\_table\_entry ::= hex\_number

parameter ::= hex\_number | N\_variable | "T" type\_table\_entry

Level 2 does not define the semantics of the parameters. These are defined at level 3, the language layer. A linkage editor which does not have knowledge of the semantics of the parameter in a type command can still perform type comparison: Two types are considered to compare equal when the following conditions hold:

- both types have an equal number of parameters.
- the numeric values in the types are equal
- N\_variables in both types have the same name
- the type entries referenced from both types compare equal

Variable N0 is supposed to compare equal to any other name.

Type table entry T0 is supposed to compare equal to any other type.

#### **4.1.4.5 Value Assignment**

### **AS Command**

The assignment command assigns a value to a variable.

AS\_command ::= "AS" MUFOM\_variable "," expression "."

#### **4.1.4.6 Loading Commands**

The contents of a section is either absolute data (code) or relocatable data (code). Absolute data can be loaded with the LD command. The address where loading takes place depends on the value of the P-variable belonging to the section. Data which is contiguous in a LD command is supposed to be loaded contiguously in memory.

If data is not absolute it contains expressions which must be evaluated by the expression evaluator. The LR command allows a relocation expression to be part of the loading command.

### **LD Command**

LD\_command ::= "LD" [ hex\_digit ]+ "."

The constants loaded with the LD command are loaded with the most significant part first.

### **IR Command**

A relocation base is an expression which can be associated with a relocation letter. This relocation letter can be used in subsequent load relocate commands.

IR\_command ::= "IR" relocation\_letter "," relocation\_base [ "," number\_of\_bits ]? "."

relocation\_letter ::= nonhex\_letter

relocation\_base ::= expression

number\_of\_bits ::= expression

Example:

```
IRV,X20,16.  
ITM,R2,40,+,8.
```

The number\_of\_bits must be less than or equal to the number of bits per address, which is the product of the number of MAUs per address and the number of bits per MAU, both of which are specified in the AD command. If the number\_of\_bits is not specified it equals the number of bits per address.

### LR Command

```
LR_command      ::=  "LR" [ load_item ]+ "."  
load_item       ::=  relocation_letter offset "," | load_constant |  
                    "(" expression [ "," number_of_MAUs ]? ")"  
load_constant   ::=  [ hex_digit ]+  
number_of_MAUs  ::=  expression
```

Examples:

```
LR002000400060.  
LRT80,0020.  
LR(R2,100,+,4).
```

The first example shows immediate constants which may be loaded as a part of an LR command.

The second example shows the use of the relocation base defined in the previous paragraph, followed by a constant.

The third example shows how the value of the expression R2 + 100 is used to load 4 MAUs.

The three commands in this example may be combined into one LR command:

```
LR002000400060T80,0020(R2,100,+,4).
```

### RE Command

The replicate command defines the number of times a LR command must be replicated:

```
RE_command ::= "RE" expression "."
```

The LR command must immediately follow the RE command.

Example:

```
RE04.  
LR(R2,200,+,4).
```

The commands above load 16 MAUs: 4 times the 4 MAU value of R2 + 200

## 4.1.4.7 Linkage Commands

### RI Command

The retain internal symbol command indicates that the symbolic information of an NI command must be retained in the output file.

```
RI_command      ::=  "R" I_variable [ "," level_number ]? "."  
level_number    ::=  hex_number
```

### WX Command

The weak external command flags a previously defined external (NX\_command) as weak. This means that if the external remains unresolved, the value of the expression in the WX command is assigned to the X variable.

```
WX_command      ::=  "W" X_variable [ "," default_value ]? "."  
default_value    ::=  expression
```

## **LI Command**

The LI command specifies a default library search list. The library names specified in the LI\_command are searched for unresolved references.

```
LI_command ::= "LI" char_string [ "," char_string ]* "."
```

## **LX Command**

The LX command specifies a library to search for a named unresolved variable.

```
LX_command ::= "L" X_variable [ "," char_string ]+ "."
```

The paragraphs above showed the commands and operators as ASCII strings. In an object file they are binary encoded. The following tables show the binary representation.

### **4.1.5 MUFOM Functions**

The following table lists the first byte of MUFOM elements. Each value between 0 and 255 classifies the MUFOM language element that follows, or it is a language element itself. E.g. numbers outside the range 0–127 are preceded by a length field: 0x82 specifies that a 2 byte integer follows. 0xE4 is the function code for the LR command.

#### **Overview of first byte of MUFOM language elements**

Value	Description
0x00 – 0x7F	Start of regular string, or one byte numbers ranging 0 – 127
0x80	Code for omitted optional number field
0x81 – 0x88	Numbers outside the range 0 – 127
0x89 – 0x8F	Unused
0x90 – 0xA0	User defined function codes
0xA0 – 0xBF	MUFOM function codes
0xC0	Unused
0xC1 – 0xDA	MUFOM letters
0xDB – 0xDF	Unused
0xE0 – 0xF9	MUFOM commands
0xFA – 0xFF	Unused

Table 4-2: Overview of first byte of MUFOM language elements

#### **Binary encoding of MUFOM letters and function codes**

Function code		Identifiers	
Function	code	Letter	code
@F	0xA0		
@T	0xA1	A	0xC1
@ABS	0xA2	B	0xC2
@NEG	0xA3	C	0xC3
@NOT	0xA4	D	0xC4
+	0xA5	E	0xC5
–	0xA6	F	0xC6
/	0xA7	G	0xC7
*	0xA8	H	0xC8
@MAX	0xA9	I	0xC9

Function code		Identifiers	
Function	code	Letter	code
@MIN	0xAA	J	0xCA
@MOD	0xAB	K	0xCB
<	0xAC	L	0xCC
>	0xAD	M	0xCD
=	0xAE	N	0xCE
!= <>	0xAF	O	0xCF
@AND	0xB0	P	0xD0
@OR	0xB1	Q	0xD1
@XOR	0xB2	R	0xD2
@EXT	0xB3	S	0xD3
@INS	0xB4	T	0xD4
@ERR	0xB5	U	0xD5
@IF	0xB6	V	0xD6
@ELSE	0xB7	W	0xD7
@END	0xB8	X	0xD8
@ISDEF	0xB9	Y	0xD9
		Z	0xDA

Table 4-3: Binary encoding of MUFOM letters and function codes

### MUFOM Command codes

Command	Code	Description
MB	0xE0	Module begin
ME	0xE1	Module end
AS	0xE2	Assign
IR	0xE3	Initialize relocation base
LR	0xE4	Load with relocation
SB	0xE5	Section begin
ST	0xE6	Section type
SA	0xE7	Section alignment
NI	0xE8	Internal name
NX	0xE9	External name
CO	0xEA	Comment
DT	0xEB	Date and time
AD	0xEC	Address description
LD	0xED	Load
CS (with sum)	0xEE	Checksum followed by sum value
CS	0xEF	Checksum (reset sum to 0 )
NN	0xF0	Name
AT	0xF1	Attribute
TY	0xF2	Type
RI	0xF3	Retain internal symbol

Command	Code	Description
WX	0xF4	Weak external
LI	0xF5	Library search list
LX	0xF6	Library external
RE	0xF7	Replicate
SC	0xF8	Scope definition
LN	0xF9	Line number
	0xFA	Undefined
	0xFB	Undefined
	0xFC	Undefined
	0xFD	Undefined
	0xFE	Undefined
	0xFF	Undefined

Table 4-4: MUFOM Command codes

## 4.2 Motorola S-Record Format

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC** option the linker produces output in Motorola S-record format with three types of S-records: S0, S3 and S7. With the options **-ofilename:SREC:2** or **-ofilename:SREC:3** option you can force other types of S-records. They have the following layout:

### S0 - record

'S' '0' <length\_byte> <2 bytes 0> <comment> <checksum\_byte>

A linker generated S-record file starts with a S0 record with the following contents:

```
length_byte  : $09
comment      : lk165x
checksum     : $0B

      l k 1 6 5 x
S00900006C6B313635780B
```

The S0 record is a comment record and does not contain relevant information for program execution.

The length\_byte represents the number of bytes in the record, not including the record type and length byte.

The checksum is calculated by first adding the binary representation of the bytes following the record type (starting with the length\_byte) to just before the checksum. Then the one's complement is calculated of this sum. The least significant byte of the result is the checksum. The sum of all bytes following the record type is 0FFH.

### S1 - record

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:2**, the actual program code and data is supplied with S1 records, with the following layout:

'S' '1' <length\_byte> <address> <code bytes> <checksum\_byte>

This record is used for 2-byte addresses.

Example:

```
S1130250F03EF04DF0ACE8A408A2A013EDFCDB00E6
| | |                                     |_ checksum
| | | |_ code
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The linker has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S1 records. The default buffer length is 32 code bytes.

The checksum calculation of S1 records is identical to S0.

### S2 - record

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:3**, the actual program code and data is supplied with S2 records, with the following layout:

'S' '2' <length\_byte> <address> <code bytes> <checksum\_byte>

This record is used for 3-byte addresses.

Example:

```
S213FF002000232222754E00754F04AF4FAE4E22BF
| | |                                     |_ checksum
| | | |_ code
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The linker has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S2 records. The default buffer length is 32 code bytes.

The checksum calculation of S2 records is identical to S0.

### **S3 – record**

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:4**, which is the default, the actual program code and data is supplied with S3 records, with the following layout:

'S' '3' <length\_byte> <address> <code bytes> <checksum\_byte>

The linker generates 4-byte addresses by default.

Example:

```
S3070000FFFE6E6825
| |         | | checksum
| |         | | code
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The linker has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S3 records.

The checksum calculation of S3 records is identical to S0.

### **S7 – record**

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:4**, which is the default, at the end of an S-record file, the linker generates an S7 record, which contains the program start address. S7 is the corresponding termination record for S3 records.

Layout:

'S' '7' <length\_byte> <address> <checksum\_byte>

Example:

```
S70500000000FA
| |         |_checksum
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The checksum calculation of S7 records is identical to S0.

### **S8 – record**

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:3**, at the end of an S-record file, the linker generates an S8 record, which contains the program start address.

Layout:

'S' '8' <length\_byte> <address> <checksum\_byte>

Example:

```
S804FF0003F9
| |         |_checksum
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The checksum calculation of S8 records is identical to S0.

### **S9 – record**

With the linker option **-ofilename:SREC:2**, at the end of an S-record file, the linker generates an S9 record, which contains the program start address. S9 is the corresponding termination record for S1 records.

Layout:

'S' '9' <length\_byte> <address> <checksum\_byte>



Example:

```
S9030210EA
| |   |_checksum
| |_ address
|_ length
```

The checksum calculation of S9 records is identical to S0.

## 4.3 Intel Hex Record Format

Intel Hex records describe the hexadecimal object file format for 8-bit, 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors. The hexadecimal object file is an ASCII representation of an absolute binary object file. There are six different types of records:

- Data Record (8-, 16, or 32-bit formats)
- End of File Record (8-, 16, or 32-bit formats)
- Extended Segment Address Record (16, or 32-bit formats)
- Start Segment Address Record (16, or 32-bit formats)
- Extended Linear Address Record (32-bit format only)
- Start Linear Address Record (32-bit format only)

By default the linker generates records in the 32-bit format (4-byte addresses).

### General Record Format

In the output file, the record format is:

:	<i>length</i>	<i>offset</i>	<i>type</i>	<i>content</i>	<i>checksum</i>
---	---------------	---------------	-------------	----------------	-----------------

Where:

:

is the record header.

*length* is the record length which specifies the number of bytes of the *content* field. This value occupies one byte (two hexadecimal digits). The linker outputs records of 255 bytes (32 hexadecimal digits) or less; that is, *length* is never greater than FFH.

*offset* is the starting load offset specifying an absolute address in memory where the data is to be located when loaded by a tool. This field is two bytes long. This field is only used for Data Records. In other records this field is coded as four ASCII zero characters ('0000').

*type* is the record type. This value occupies one byte (two hexadecimal digits). The record types are:

Byte Type	Record type
00	Data
01	End of File
02	Extended segment address (not used)
03	Start segment address (not used)
04	Extended linear address (32-bit)
05	Start linear address (32-bit)

*content* is the information contained in the record. This depends on the record type.

*checksum* is the record checksum. The linker computes the checksum by first adding the binary representation of the previous bytes (from *length* to *content*). The linker then computes the result of sum modulo 256 and subtracts the remainder from 256 (two's complement). Therefore, the sum of all bytes following the header is zero.

### Extended Linear Address Record

The Extended Linear Address Record specifies the two most significant bytes (bits 16–31) of the absolute address of the first data byte in a subsequent Data Record:

:	02	0000	04	<i>upper_address</i>	<i>checksum</i>
---	----	------	----	----------------------	-----------------

The 32-bit absolute address of a byte in a Data Record is calculated as:

$$( address + offset + index ) \text{ modulo } 4G$$

where:

*address* is the base address, where the two most significant bytes are the *upper\_address* and the two least significant bytes are zero.

*offset* is the 16-bit offset from the Data Record.

*index* is the index of the data byte within the Data Record (0 for the first byte).

Example:

```
:0200000400FFFB
| | | | | _ checksum
| | | | | _ upper_address
| | | | | _ type
| | | | | _ offset
| | | | | _ length
```

### **Data Record**

The Data Record specifies the actual program code and data.

:	<i>length</i>	<i>offset</i>	00	<i>data</i>	<i>checksum</i>
---	---------------	---------------	----	-------------	-----------------

The *length* byte specifies the number of *data* bytes. The linker has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating Data records. The default buffer length is 32 bytes.

The *offset* is the 16-bit starting load offset. Together with the address specified in the Extended Address Record it specifies an absolute address in memory where the data is to be located when loaded by a tool.

Example:

```
:0F00200000232222754E00754F04AF4FAE4E22C3
| | | | | _ checksum
| | | | | _ data
| | | | | _ type
| | | | | _ offset
| | | | | _ length
```

### **Start Linear Address Record**

The Start Linear Address Record contains the 32-bit program execution start address.

Layout:

:	04	0000	05	<i>address</i>	<i>checksum</i>
---	----	------	----	----------------	-----------------

Example:

```
:0400000500FF0003F5
| | | | | _ checksum
| | | | | _ address
| | | | | _ type
| | | | | _ offset
| | | | | _ length
```

### ***End of File Record***

The hexadecimal file always ends with the following end-of-file record:

```
:00000001FF
| | | | _ checksum
| | | | _ type
| | _ offset
| _ length
```



## 5 Linker Script Language

### Summary

This chapter describes the syntax of the linker script language (LSL)

### 5.1 Introduction

To make full use of the linker, you can write a script with information about the architecture of the target processor and locating information. The language for the script is called the *Linker Script Language* (LSL). This chapter first describes the structure of an LSL file. The next section contains a summary of the LSL syntax. Finally, in the remaining sections, the semantics of the Linker Script Language is explained.

The TASKING linker is a target independent linker/locator that can simultaneously link and locate all programs for all cores available on a target board. The target board may be of arbitrary complexity. A simple target board may contain one standard processor with some external memory that executes one task. A complex target board may contain multiple standard processors and DSPs combined with configurable IP-cores loaded in an FPGA. Each core may execute a different program, and external memory may be shared by multiple cores.

LSL serves two purposes. First it enables you to specify the characteristics (that are of interest to the linker) of your specific target board and of the cores installed on the board. Second it enables you to specify how sections should be located in memory.

### 5.2 Structure of a Linker Script File

A script file consists of several definitions. The definitions can appear in any order.

#### **The architecture definition (required)**

In essence an *architecture definition* describes how the linker should convert logical addresses into physical addresses for a given type of core. If the core supports multiple address spaces, then for each space the linker must know how to perform this conversion. In this context a physical address is an offset on a given internal or external bus. Additionally the architecture definition contains information about items such as the (hardware) stack and the vector table.

This specification is normally written by Altium. The architecture definition of the LSL file should not be changed by you unless you also modify the core's hardware architecture. If the LSL file describes a multi-core system an architecture definition must be available for each different type of core.



See section 5.5, [Semantics of the Architecture Definition](#) for detailed descriptions of LSL in the architecture definition.

#### **The derivative definition**

The *derivative definition* describes the configuration of the internal (on-chip) bus and memory system. Basically it tells the linker how to convert offsets on the buses specified in the architecture definition into offsets in internal memory. A derivative definition must be present in an LSL file. Microcontrollers and DSPs often have internal memory and I/O sub-systems apart from one or more cores. The design of such a chip is called a *derivative*.

When you design an FPGA together with a PCB, the components on the FPGA become part of the board design and there is no need to distinguish between internal and external memory. For this reason you probably do not need to work with derivative definitions at all. There are, however, two situations where derivative definitions are useful:

1. When you re-use an FPGA design for several board designs it may be practical to write a derivative definition for the FPGA design and include it in the project LSL file.
2. When you want to use multiple cores of the same type, you must instantiate the cores in a derivative definition, since the linker automatically instantiates only a single core for an unused architecture.



See section 5.6, [Semantics of the Derivative Definition](#) for a detailed description of LSL in the derivative definition.

### The processor definition

The *processor definition* describes an instance of a derivative. Typically the processor definition instantiates one derivative only (single-core processor). A processor that contains multiple cores having the same (homogeneous) or different (heterogeneous) architecture can also be described by instantiating multiple derivatives of the same or different types in separate processor definitions.

If for a derivative 'A' no processor is defined in the LSL file, the linker automatically creates a processor named 'A' of derivative 'A'. This is why for single-processor applications it is enough to specify the derivative in the LSL file.



See section 5.7, [Semantics of the Board Specification](#) for a detailed description of LSL in the processor definition.

### The memory and bus definitions (optional)

Memory and bus definition are used within the context of a derivative definition to specify internal memory and on-chip buses. In the context of a board specification the memory and bus definitions are used to define external (off-chip) memory and buses. Given the above definitions the linker can convert a logical address into an offset into an on-chip or off-chip memory device.



See section 5.7.3, [Defining External Memory and Buses](#), for more information on how to specify the external physical memory layout. *Internal* memory for a processor should be defined in the derivative definition for that processor.

### The board specification

The processor definition and memory and bus definitions together form a *board specification*. LSL provides language constructs to easily describe single-core and heterogeneous or homogeneous multi-core systems. The board specification describes all characteristics of your target board's system buses, memory devices, I/O sub-systems, and cores that are of interest to the linker. Based on the information provided in the board specification the linker can for each core:

- convert a logical address to an offset within a memory device
- locate sections in physical memory
- maintain an overall view of the used and free physical memory within the whole system while locating

### The section layout definition (optional)

The optional *section layout definition* enables you to exactly control where input sections are located. Features are provided such as: the ability to place sections at a given load-address or run-time address, to place sections in a given order, and to overlay code and/or data sections.

Which object files (sections) constitute the task that will run on a given core is specified on the command line when you invoke the linker. The linker will link and locate all sections of all tasks simultaneously. From the section layout definition the linker can deduce where a given section may be located in memory, from the board specification the linker can deduce which physical memory is (still) available while locating the section.



See section 5.9, [Semantics of the Section Layout Definition](#), for more information on how to locate a section at a specific place in memory.

### Skeleton of a Linker Script File

The skeleton of a linker script file now looks as follows:

```
architecture architecture_name
{
    architecture definition
}

derivative derivative_name
{
    derivative definition
}
```

```
processor processor_name
{
    processor definition
}

memory definitions and/or bus definitions

section_layout space_name
{
    section placement statements
}
```

## 5.3 Syntax of the Linker Script Language

### 5.3.1 Preprocessing

When the linker loads an LSL file, the linker processes it with a C-style preprocessor. As such, it strips C and C++ comments. You can use the standard ISO C preprocessor directives, such as `#include`, `#define`, `#if/#else/#endif`.

For example:

```
#include "arch.lsl"
```

Preprocess and include the file `arch.lsl` at this point in the LSL file.

### 5.3.2 Lexical Syntax

The following lexicon is used to describe the syntax of the Linker Script Language:

<code>A ::= B</code>	= <i>A</i> is defined as <i>B</i>
<code>A ::= B C</code>	= <i>A</i> is defined as <i>B</i> and <i>C</i> ; <i>B</i> is followed by <i>C</i>
<code>A ::= B   C</code>	= <i>A</i> is defined as <i>B</i> or <i>C</i>
<code>&lt;B&gt;<sup>0</sup> <sup>1</sup></code>	= zero or one occurrence of <i>B</i>
<code>&lt;B&gt;<sup>&gt;=0</sup></code>	= zero or more occurrences of <i>B</i>
<code>&lt;B&gt;<sup>&gt;=1</sup></code>	= one or more occurrences of <i>B</i>

**IDENTIFIER** = a character sequence starting with 'a'-'z', 'A'-'Z' or '\_'.  
Following characters may also be digits and dots '.'.

**STRING** = sequence of characters not starting with \n, \r or \t

**DQSTRING** = " *STRING* " (double quoted string)

**OCT\_NUM** = octal number, starting with a zero (06, 045)

**DEC\_NUM** = decimal number, not starting with a zero (14, 1024)

**HEX\_NUM** = hexadecimal number, starting with '0x' (0x0023, 0xFF00)

**OCT\_NUM**, **DEC\_NUM** and **HEX\_NUM** can be followed by a **k** (kilo), **M** (mega), or **G** (giga).

Characters in **bold** are characters that occur literally. Words in *italics* are higher order terms that are defined in the same or in one of the other sections.

To write comments in LSL file, you can use the C style `/* */` or C++ style `/**/`.

### 5.3.3 Identifiers

```

arch_name      ::= IDENTIFIER
bus_name       ::= IDENTIFIER
core_name      ::= IDENTIFIER
derivative_name ::= IDENTIFIER
file_name      ::= DQSTRING
group_name     ::= IDENTIFIER
mem_name       ::= IDENTIFIER
proc_name      ::= IDENTIFIER
section_name   ::= DQSTRING
space_name     ::= IDENTIFIER
stack_name     ::= section_name
symbol_name    ::= DQSTRING

```

### 5.3.4 Expressions

The expressions and operators in this section work the same as in ISO C.

```

number         ::= OCT_NUM
                | DEC_NUM
                | HEX_NUM

expr           ::= number
                | symbol_name
                | unary_op expr
                | expr binary_op expr
                | expr ? expr : expr
                | ( expr )
                | function_call

unary_op       ::= !      // logical NOT
                | ~      // bitwise complement
                | -      // negative value

binary_op      ::= ^      // exclusive OR
                | *      // multiplication
                | /      // division
                | %      // modulus
                | +      // addition
                | -      // subtraction
                | >>     // right shift
                | <<     // left shift
                | ==     // equal to
                | !=     // not equal to
                | >      // greater than
                | <      // less than
                | >=     // greater than or equal to
                | <=     // less than or equal to
                | &      // bitwise AND
                | |      // bitwise OR
                | &&     // logical AND
                | ||     // logical OR

```



### 5.3.5 Built-in Functions

```
function_call ::= absolute ( expr )
               | addressof ( addr_id )
               | exists ( section_name )
               | max ( expr , expr )
               | min ( expr , expr )
               | sizeof ( size_id )

addr_id ::= sect : section_name
         | group : group_name

size_id ::= sect : section_name
         | group : group_name
         | mem : mem_name
```

- Every space, bus, memory, section or group you refer to, must be defined in the LSL file.
- The `addressof()` and `sizeof()` functions with the **group** or **sect** argument can only be used in the right hand side of an assignment. The `sizeof()` function with the **mem** argument can be used anywhere in section layouts.

You can use the following built-in functions in expressions. All functions return a numerical value. This value is a 64-bit signed integer.

#### ***absolute()***

```
int absolute( expr )
```

Converts the value of *expr* to a positive integer.

```
absolute( "labelA"-"labelB" )
```

#### ***addressof()***

```
int addressof( addr_id )
```

Returns the address of *addr\_id*, which is a named section or group. To get the offset of the section with the name *asect*:

```
addressof( sect: "asect" )
```



This function only works in assignments.

#### ***exists()***

```
int exists( section_name )
```

The function returns 1 if the section *section\_name* exists in one or more object file, 0 otherwise. If the section is not present in input object files, but generated from LSL, the result of this function is undefined.

To check whether the section *mysection* exists in one of the object files that is specified to the linker:

```
exists( "mysection" )
```

#### ***max()***

```
int max( expr, expr )
```

Returns the value of the expression that has the largest value. To get the highest value of two symbols:

```
max( "sym1" , "sym2" )
```

### **min()**

```
int min( expr, expr )
```

Returns the value of the expression that has the smallest value. To get the lowest value of two symbols:

```
min( "sym1" , "sym2" )
```

### **sizeof()**

```
int sizeof( size_id )
```

Returns the size of the object (group, section or memory) the identifier refers to. To get the size of the section "asection":

```
sizeof( sect: "asection" )
```



The **group** and **sect** arguments only work in assignments. The **mem** argument can be used anywhere in section layouts.

## 5.3.6 LSL Definitions in the Linker Script File

```
description      ::= <definition>>=1
```

```
definition       ::= architecture_definition  
                  | derivative_definition  
                  | board_spec  
                  | section_definition  
                  | section_setup
```

- At least one *architecture\_definition* must be present in the LSL file.

## 5.3.7 Memory and Bus Definitions

```
mem_def          ::= memory mem_name { <mem_descr ;>=0 }
```

- A *mem\_def* defines a *memory* with the *mem\_name* as a unique name.

```
mem_descr        ::= type = <reserved>0|1 mem_type  
                  | mau = expr  
                  | size = expr  
                  | speed = number  
                  | mapping
```

- A *mem\_def* contains exactly one **type** statement.
- A *mem\_def* contains exactly one **mau** statement (non-zero size).
- A *mem\_def* contains exactly one **size** statement.
- A *mem\_def* contains zero or one **speed** statement (default value is 1).
- A *mem\_def* contains at least one *mapping*.

```
mem_type         ::= rom           // attrs = rx  
                  | ram           // attrs = rw  
                  | nvram         // attrs = rwx
```

```
bus_def          ::= bus bus_name { <bus_descr ;>=0 }
```

- A *bus\_def* statement defines a *bus* with the given *bus\_name* as a unique name within a core architecture.

```
bus_descr        ::= mau = expr  
                  | width = expr // bus width, nr  
                  |             // of data bits  
                  | mapping      // legal destination  
                  |             // 'bus' only
```

- The **mau** and **width** statements appear exactly once in a *bus\_descr*. The default value for **width** is the **mau** size.
- The bus width must be an integer times the bus MAU size.

- The MAU size must be non-zero.
- A bus can only have a *mapping* on a destination *bus* (through **dest = bus:**).

```
mapping                ::= map ( map_descr <, map_descr>*>=0 )
```

```
map_descr              ::= dest = destination
                          | dest_dbits = range
                          | dest_offset = expr
                          | size = expr
                          | src_dbits = range
                          | src_offset = expr
```

- A *mapping* requires at least the **size** and **dest** statements.
- Each *map\_descr* can occur only once.
- You can define multiple mappings from a single source.
- Overlap between source ranges or destination ranges is not allowed.
- If the **src\_dbits** or **dest\_dbits** statement is not present, its value defaults to the **width** value if the source/destination is a bus, and to the **mau** size otherwise.

```
destination            ::= space : space_name
                          | bus : <proc_name |
                              core_name :>0|1 bus_name
```

- A *space\_name* refers to a defined address space.
- A *proc\_name* refers to a defined processor.
- A *core\_name* refers to a defined core.
- A *bus\_name* refers to a defined bus.
- The following mappings are allowed (source to destination)
  - space => space
  - space => bus
  - bus => bus
  - memory => bus

```
range                  ::= expr .. expr
```

## 5.3.8 Architecture Definition

```
architecture_definition ::= architecture arch_name
                          <( parameter_list )>0|1
                          <extends arch_name
                              <( argument_list )>0|1 >0|1
                              { arch_spec*>=0 }
```

- An *architecture\_definition* defines a core *architecture* with the given *arch\_name* as a unique name.
- At least one *space\_def* and at least one *bus\_def* have to be present in an *architecture\_definition*.
- An *architecture\_definition* that uses the **extends** construct defines an architecture that *inherits* all elements of the architecture defined by the second *arch\_name*. The *parent architecture* must be defined in the LSL file as well.

```
parameter_list         ::= parameter <, parameter>*>=0
```

```
parameter              ::= IDENTIFIER <= expr>0|1
```

```
argument_list          ::= expr <, expr>*>=0
```

```
arch_spec              ::= bus_def
                          | space_def
                          | endianness_def
```

```
space_def              ::= space space_name { <space_descr;*>=0 }
```

- A *space\_def* defines an address space with the given *space\_name* as a unique name within an architecture.

```
space_descr      ::= space_property ;
                  | section_definition //no space ref
                  | vector_table_statement
                  | reserved_range

space_property   ::= id = number // as used in object
                  | mau = expr
                  | align = expr
                  | page_size = expr <[ range ] <| [ range ]>=>0 >0|1
                  | page
                  | direction = direction
                  | stack_def
                  | heap_def
                  | copy_table_def
                  | start_address
                  | mapping
```

- A *space\_def* contains exactly one **id** and one **mau** statement.
- A *space\_def* contains at most one **align** statement.
- A *space\_def* contains at most one **page\_size** statement.
- A *space\_def* contains at least one mapping.

```
stack_def        ::= stack stack_name ( stack_heap_descr
                                     <, stack_heap_descr >=>0 )
```

- A *stack\_def* defines a stack with the *stack\_name* as a unique name.

```
heap_def         ::= heap heap_name ( stack_heap_descr
                                     <, stack_heap_descr >=>0 )
```

- A *heap\_def* defines a heap with the *heap\_name* as a unique name.

```
stack_heap_descr ::= min_size = expr
                  | grows = direction
                  | align = expr
                  | fixed
                  | id = expr
```

- The **min\_size** statement must be present.
- You can specify at most one **align** statement and one **grows** statement.
- Each stack definition has its own unique **id**, the number specified corresponds to the index in the **.CALLS** directive as generated by the compiler. If the **id** is omitted, the id is 0 (zero).

```
direction        ::= low_to_high
                  | high_to_low
```

- If you do not specify the **grows** statement, the stack and grow **low-to-high**.

```
copy_table_def   ::= copytable <( copy_table_descr
                               <, copy_table_descr>=>0 )>0|1
```

- A *space\_def* contains at most one **copytable** statement.
- If the architecture definition contains more than one address space, exactly one copy table must be defined in one of the spaces. If the architecture definition contains only one address space, a copy table definition is optional (it will be generated in the space).

```
copy_table_descr ::= align = expr
                  | copy_unit = expr
                  | dest <space_name>0|1 = space_name
                  | page
```

- The **copy\_unit** is defined by the size in MAUs in which the startup code moves data.
- The **dest** statement is only required when the startup code initializes memory used by another processor that has no access to ROM.
- A *space\_name* refers to a defined address space.

```
start_addr      ::= start_address ( start_addr_descr  
                                <, start_addr_descr>*>=0 )

start_addr_descr ::= run_addr = expr  
                   | symbol = symbol_name

• A symbol_name refers to the section that contains the startup code.

vector_table_statement  
    ::= vector_table section_name  
      ( vecttab_spec <, vecttab_spec>*>=0 )  
      { <vector_def>*>=0 }

vecttab_spec    ::= vector_size = expr  
                  | size = expr  
                  | id_symbol_prefix = symbol_name  
                  | run_addr = addr_absolute  
                  | template = section_name  
                  | template_symbol = symbol_name  
                  | vector_prefix = section_name  
                  | fill = vector_value  
                  | no_inline  
                  | copy

vector_def      ::= vector ( vector_spec <, vector_spec>*>=0 )

vector_spec     ::= id = vector_id_spec  
                  | fill = vector_value

vector_id_spec  ::= number  
                  | [ range ] <, [ range ]>*>=0

vector_value    ::= symbol_name  
                  | [ number <, number>*>=0 ]  
                  | loop <[ expr ]>*>=0|1

reserved_range  ::= reserved expr .. expr ;

endianness_def  ::= endianness { <endianness_type;>*>=1 }

endianness_type ::= big  
                   | little
```

### 5.3.9 Derivative Definition

```
derivative_definition  
    ::= derivative derivative_name  
      < ( parameter_list )>*>=0|1  
      < extends derivative_name  
        < ( argument_list )>*>=0|1 >*>=0|1  
      { <derivative_spec>*>=0 }

• A derivative_definition defines a derivative with the given derivative_name as a unique name.

derivative_spec  ::= core_def  
                  | bus_def  
                  | mem_def  
                  | section_definition // no processor name  
                  | section_setup

core_def         ::= core core_name { <core_descr ;>*>=0 }

• A core_def defines a core with the given core_name as a unique name.  
• At least one core_def must be present in a derivative_definition.
```

```
core_descr      ::= architecture = arch_name
                  <( argument_list )>0|1
                  | endianness = ( endianness_type
                  <, endianness_type>>=0 )
```

- An *arch\_name* refers to a defined core architecture.
- Exactly one **architecture** statement must be present in a *core\_def*.

### 5.3.10 Processor Definition and Board Specification

```
board_spec      ::= proc_def
                  | bus_def
                  | mem_def

proc_def        ::= processor proc_name
                  { proc_descr ; }

proc_descr      ::= derivative = derivative_name
                  <( argument_list )>0|1
```

- A *proc\_def* defines a *processor* with the *proc\_name* as a unique name.
- If you do not explicitly define a processor for a derivative in an LSL file, the linker defines a processor with the same name as that derivative.
- A *derivative\_name* refers to a defined derivative.
- A *proc\_def* contains exactly one **derivative** statement.

### 5.3.11 Section Layout Definition and Section Setup

```
section_definition ::= section_layout <space_ref>0|1
                      <( locate_direction )>0|1
                      { <section_statement>>=0 }
```

- A section definition inside a space definition does not have a *space\_ref*.
- All global section definitions have a *space\_ref*.

```
space_ref       ::= <proc_name>0|1 : <core_name>0|1
                  : space_name
```

- If more than one processor is present, the *proc\_name* must be given for a global section layout.
- If the section layout refers to a processor that has more than one core, the *core\_name* must be given in the *space\_ref*.
- A *proc\_name* refers to a defined processor.
- A *core\_name* refers to a defined core.
- A *space\_name* refers to a defined address space.

```
locate_direction ::= direction = direction
```

```
direction       ::= low_to_high
                  | high_to_low
```

- A section layout contains at most one **direction** statement.
- If you do not specify the **direction** statement, the locate direction of the section layout is **low-to-high**.

```
section_statement ::= simple_section_statement ;
                  | aggregate_section_statement
```

```
simple_section_statement ::= assignment
                        | select_section_statement
                        | special_section_statement
```

```
assignment      ::= symbol_name assign_op expr
```

```
assign_op       ::= =
                  | :=
```

*select\_section\_statement*

```
::= select <ref_tree>0|1 <section_name>0|1  
      <section_selections>0|1
```

- Either a *section\_name* or at least one *section\_selection* must be defined.

*section\_selections*

```
::= ( section_selection  
      <, section_selection>>=0 )
```

*section\_selection*

```
::= attributes = < <+|-> attribute>>0
```

- **+attribute** means: select all sections that have this attribute.
- **-attribute** means: select all sections that do not have this attribute.

*special\_section\_statement*

```
::= heap stack_name <size_spec>0|1  
    | stack stack_name <size_spec>0|1  
    | copytable  
    | reserved section_name <reserved_specs>0|1
```

- Special sections cannot be selected in load-time groups.

*size\_spec* ::= ( **size** = *expr* )

*reserved\_specs* ::= ( *reserved\_spec* <, *reserved\_spec*><sup>>=0</sup> )

```
reserved_spec ::= attributes  
                  | fill_spec  
                  | size = expr  
                  | alloc_allowed = absolute
```

- If a **reserved** section has attributes **r**, **rw**, **x**, **rx** or **rwX**, and no fill pattern is defined, the section is filled with zeros. If no attributes are set, the section is created as a scratch section (attributes **ws**, no image).

*fill\_spec* ::= **fill** = *fill\_values*

```
fill_values ::= expr  
                | [ expr <, expr>>=0 ]
```

*aggregate\_section\_statement*

```
::= { <section_statement>>=0 }  
    | group_descr  
    | if_statement  
    | section_creation_statement
```

```
group_descr ::= group <group_name>0|1 <( group_specs )>0|1  
                section_statement
```

- No two groups for an address space can have the same *group\_name*.

*group\_specs* ::= *group\_spec* <, *group\_spec* ><sup>>=0</sup>

```
group_spec ::= group_alignment  
               | attributes  
               | copy  
               | nocopy  
               | group_load_address  
               | fill <= fill_values>0|1  
               | group_page  
               | group_run_address  
               | group_type  
               | allow_cross_references  
               | priority = number
```

- The **allow-cross-references** property is only allowed for *overlay* groups.
- Sub groups inherit all properties from a parent group.

```

group_alignment    ::= align = expr

attributes         ::= attributes = <attribute>*>=1

attribute          ::= r      // readable sections
                    | w      // writable sections
                    | x      // executable code sections
                    | i      // initialized sections
                    | s      // scratch sections
                    | b      // blanked (cleared) sections

group_load_address ::= load_addr <= load_or_run_addr>0|1

group_page         ::= page <= expr>0|1
                    | page_size = expr <[ range ] <| [ range ]>*>=0 >0|1

group_run_address  ::= run_addr <= load_or_run_addr>0|1

group_type         ::= clustered
                    | contiguous
                    | ordered
                    | overlay

```

- For *non-contiguous* groups, you can only specify *group\_alignment* and *attributes*.
- The **overlay** keyword also sets the **contiguous** property.
- The **clustered** property cannot be set together with **contiguous** or **ordered** on a single group.

```

load_or_run_addr  ::= addr_absolute
                    | addr_range <| addr_range>*>=0

```

```

addr_absolute     ::= expr
                    | memory_reference [ expr ]

```

- An absolute address can only be set on *ordered* groups.

```

addr_range        ::= [ expr .. expr ]
                    | memory_reference
                    | memory_reference [ expr .. expr ]

```

- The parent of a group with an *addr\_range* or **page** restriction cannot be **ordered**, **contiguous** or **clustered**.

```

memory_reference  ::= mem : <proc_name :>0|1 <core_name :>0|1 mem_name

```

- A *proc\_name* refers to a defined processor.
- A *core\_name* refers to a defined core.
- A *mem\_name* refers to a defined memory.

```

if_statement      ::= if ( expr ) section_statement
                    <else section_statement>0|1

```

```

section_creation_statement
                    ::= section section_name ( section_specs )
                      { <section_statement2>*>=0 }

```

```

section_specs     ::= section_spec <, section_spec >*>=0

```

```

section_spec      ::= attributes
                    | fill_spec
                    | size = expr
                    | blocksize = expr
                    | overflow = section_name

```

```

section_statement2
                    ::= select_section_statement ;
                    | group_descr2
                    | { <section_statement2>*>=0 }

```



```
group_descr2      ::= group <group_name>0|1  
                   ( group_specs2 )  
                   section_statement2  
  
group_specs2      ::= group_spec2 <, group_spec2 >*=0  
  
group_spec2       ::= group_alignment  
                   | attributes  
                   | load_addr  
  
section_setup     ::= section_setup space_ref  
                   { <section_setup_item>*=0 }  
  
section_setup_item  
                   ::= vector_table_statement  
                   | reserved_range  
                   | stack_def ;  
                   | heap_def ;
```

---

## 5.4 Expression Evaluation

---

Only *constant* expressions are allowed, including sizes, but not addresses, of sections in object files.

All expressions are evaluated with 64-bit precision integer arithmetic. The result of an expression can be absolute or relocatable. A symbol you assign is created as an absolute symbol.

## 5.5 Semantics of the Architecture Definition

---

### *Keywords in the architecture definition*

```
architecture
  extends
endianness      big  little
bus
  mau
  width
  map
space
  id
  mau
  align
  page_size
  page
  direction      low_to_high  high_to_low
  stack
    min_size
    grows        low_to_high  high_to_low
    align
    fixed
    id
  heap
    min_size
    grows        low_to_high  high_to_low
    align
    fixed
    id
  copytable
    align
    copy_unit
    dest
    page
  vector_table
    vector_size
    size
    id_symbol_prefix
    run_addr
    template
    template_symbol
    vector_prefix
    fill
    no_inline
    copy
    vector
      id
      fill      loop
reserved
start_address
  run_addr
  symbol
map
```

```
map
    dest          bus space
    dest_dbits
    dest_offset
    size
    src_dbits
    src_offset
```

## 5.5.1 Defining an Architecture

With the keyword **architecture** you define an architecture and assign a unique name to it. The name is used to refer to it at other places in the LSL file:

```
architecture name
{
    definitions
}
```

If you are defining multiple core architectures that show great resemblance, you can define the common features in a parent core architecture and extend this with a child core architecture that contains specific features. The child inherits all features of the parent. With the keyword **extends** you create a child core architecture:

```
architecture name_child_arch extends name_parent_arch
{
    definitions
}
```

A core architecture can have any number of parameters. These are identifiers which get values assigned on instantiation or extension of the architecture. You can use them in any expression within the core architecture. Parameters can have default values, which are used when the core architecture is instantiated with less arguments than there are parameters defined for it. When you extend a core architecture you can pass arguments to the parent architecture. Arguments are expressions that set the value of the parameters of the sub-architecture.

```
architecture name_child_arch (parm1,parm2=1)
    extends name_parent_arch (arguments)
{
    definitions
}
```

## 5.5.2 Defining Internal Buses

With the **bus** keyword you define a bus (the combination of data and corresponding address bus). The bus name is used to identify a bus and does not conflict with other identifiers. Bus descriptions in an architecture definition or derivative definition define *internal* buses. Some internal buses are used to communicate with the components outside the core or processor. Such buses on a processor have physical pins reserved for the number of bits specified with the **width** statements.

- The **mau** field specifies the MAU size (Minimum Addressable Unit) of the data bus. This field is required.
- The **width** field specifies the width (number of address lines) of the data bus. The default value is the MAU size.
- The **map** keyword specifies how this bus maps onto another bus (if so). Mappings are described in section 5.5.4, [Mappings](#).

```
bus bus_name
{
    mau = 8;
    width = 8;
    map ( map_description );
}
```

## 5.5.3 Defining Address Spaces

With the **space** keyword you define a logical address space. The space name is used to identify the address space and does not conflict with other identifiers.

- The **id** field defines how the addressing space is identified in object files. In general, each address space has a unique ID. The linker locates sections with a certain ID in the address space with the same ID. This field is required. In IEEE this ID is specified explicitly for sections and symbols, ELF sections map by default to the address space with ID 1. Sections with one of the special names defined in the ABI (Application Binary Interface) may map to different address spaces.
- The **mau** field specifies the MAU size (Minimum Addressable Unit) of the space. This field is required.
- The **align** value must be a power of two. The linker uses this value to compute the start addresses when sections are concatenated. An align value of *n* means that objects in the address space have to be aligned on *n* MAUs.
- The **page\_size** field sets the page alignment and page size in MAUs for the address space. It must be a power of 2. The default value is 1. If one or more page ranges are supplied the supplied value only sets the page alignment. The ranges specify the available space in each page, as offsets to the page start, which is aligned at the page alignment.

See also the **page** keyword in subsection [Locating a group](#) in section 5.9.2, [Creating and Locating Groups of Sections](#).

- With the optional **direction** field you can specify how all sections in this space should be located. This can be either from **low\_to\_high** addresses (this is the default) or from **high\_to\_low** addresses.
- The **map** keyword specifies how this address space maps onto an internal bus or onto another address space. Mappings are described in section 5.5.4, [Mappings](#).

### Stacks and heaps

- The **stack** keyword defines a stack in the address space and assigns a name to it. The architecture definition must contain at least one stack definition. Each stack of a core architecture must have a unique name. See also the **stack** keyword in section 5.9.3, [Creating or Modifying Special Sections](#).

The stack is described in terms of a minimum size (**min\_size**) and the direction in which the stack grows (**grows**). This can be either from **low\_to\_high** addresses (stack grows upwards, this is the default) or from **high\_to\_low** addresses (stack grows downwards). The **min\_size** is required.

By default, the linker tries to maximize the size of the stacks and heaps. After locating all sections, the largest remaining gap in the space is used completely for the stacks and heaps. If you specify the keyword **fixed**, you can disable this so-called 'balloon behavior'. The size is also fixed if you used a stack or heap in the software layout definition in a restricted way. For example when you override a stack with another size or select a stack in an ordered group with other sections.

The **id** keyword matches stack information generated by the compiler with a stack name specified in LSL. This value assigned to this keyword is strongly related to the compiler's output, so users are not supposed to change this configuration.

Optionally you can specify an alignment for the stack with the argument **align**. This alignment must be equal or larger than the alignment that you specify for the address space itself.

- The **heap** keyword defines a heap in the address space and assigns a name to it. The definition of a heap is similar to the definition of a stack. See also the **heap** keyword in section 5.9.3, [Creating or Modifying Special Sections](#).



See section 5.9, [Semantics of the Section Layout Definition](#), for information on creating and placing stack sections.

### Copy tables

- The **copytable** keyword defines a copy table in the address space. The content of the copy table is created by the linker and contains the start address and size of all sections that should be initialized by the startup code. You must define exactly one copy table in one of the address spaces (for a core).

Optionally you can specify an alignment for the copy table with the argument **align**. This alignment must be equal or larger than the alignment that you specify for the address space itself. If smaller, the alignment for the address space is used.

The **copy\_unit** argument specifies the size in MAUs of information chunks that are copied. If you do not specify the copy unit, the MAU size of the address space itself is used.

The **dest** argument specifies the destination address space that the code uses for the copy table. The linker uses this information to generate the correct addresses in the copy table. The memory into where the sections must be copied at run-time, must be accessible from this destination space.

Sections generated for the copy table may get a page restriction with the address space's page size, by adding the **page** argument.

## Vector table

- The **vector\_table** keyword defines a vector table with  $n$  vectors of size  $m$  (This is an internal LSL object similar to an LSL group.) The **run\_addr** argument specifies the location of the first vector (id=0). This can be a simple address or an offset in memory (see the description of the run-time address in subsection [Locating a group](#) in section 5.9.2, [Creating and Locating Groups of Sections](#)). A vector table defines symbols `_lc_ub_foo` and `_lc_ue_foo` pointing to start and end of the table.

**vector\_table** "vtable" (**vector\_size**= $m$ , **size**= $n$ , **run\_addr**= $x$ , ...)

See the following example of a vector table definition:

```
vector_table "vtable" (vector_size = 4, size = 256, run_addr=0,
                        template=".text.vector_template",
                        template_symbol="_lc_vector_target",
                        vector_prefix="_vector_",
                        id_symbol_prefix="foo",
                        no_inline,
                        /* default: empty, or */
                        fill="foo", /* or */
                        fill=[1,2,3,4], /* or */
                        fill=loop)
{
    vector (id=0, fill="_START");
    vector (id=12, fill=[0xab, 0x21, 0x32, 0x43]);
    vector (id=[1..11], fill=[0]);
    vector (id=[18..23], fill=loop);
}
```

The **template** argument defines the name of the section that holds the code to jump to a handler function from the vector table. This template section does not get located and is removed when the locate phase is completed. This argument is required.

The **template\_symbol** argument is the symbol reference in the template section that must be replaced by the address of the handler function. This symbol name should start with the linker prefix for the symbol to be ignored in the link phase. This argument is required.

The **vector\_prefix** argument defines the names of vector sections: the section for a vector with id *vector\_id* is `$(vector_prefix)$ (vector_id)`. Vectors defined in C or assembly source files that should be included in the vector table must have the correct symbol name. The compiler uses the prefix that is defined in the default LSL file(s); if this attribute is changed, the vectors declared in C source files are not included in the vector table. When a vector supplied in an object file has exactly one relocation, the linker will assume it is a branch to a handler function, and can be removed when the handler is inlined in the vector table. Otherwise, no inlining is done. This argument is required.

With the optional **no\_inline** argument the vectors handlers are not inlined in the vector table.

With the optional **copy** argument a ROM copy of the vector table is made and the vector table is copied to RAM at startup.

With the optional **id\_symbol\_prefix** argument you can set an internal string representing a symbol name prefix that may be found on symbols in vector handler code. When the linker detects such a symbol in a handler, the symbol is assigned the vector number. If the symbol was already assigned a vector number, a warning is issued.

The **fill** argument sets the default contents of vectors. If nothing is specified for a vector, this setting is used. See below. When no default is provided, empty vectors may be used to locate large vector handlers and other sections. Only one **fill** argument is allowed.

The **vector** field defines the content of vector with the number specified by **id**. If a range is specified for **id** ([*p..q*,*s..t*]) all vectors in the ranges (inclusive) are defined the same way.

With **fill=symbol\_name**, the vector must jump to this symbol. If the section in which the symbol is defined fits in the vector table (size may be  $>m$ ), locate the section at the location of the vector. Otherwise, insert code to jump to the symbol's value. A template handler section name + symbol name for the target code must be supplied in the LSL file.

**fill=[value(s)]**, fills the vector with the specified MAU values.

With **fill=loop** the vector jumps to itself. With the optional [**offset**] you can specify an offset from the vector table entry.

### Reserved address ranges

- The **reserved** keyword specifies to reserve a part of an address space even if not all of the range is covered by memory. See also the **reserved** keyword in section 5.9.3, [Creating or Modifying Special Sections](#).

### Start address

- The **start\_address** keyword specifies the start address for the position where the C startup code is located. When a processor is reset, it initializes its program counter to a certain start address, sometimes called the *reset vector*. In the architecture definition, you must specify this start address in the correct address space in combination with the name of the label in the application code which must be located here.

The **run\_addr** argument specifies the start address (reset vector). If the core starts executing using an entry from a vector table, and directly jumps to the start label, you should omit this argument.

The **symbol** argument specifies the name of the label in the application code that should be located at the specified start address. The **symbol** argument is required. The linker will resolve the start symbol and use its value after locating for the start address field in IEEE-695 files and Intel Hex files. If you also specified the **run\_addr** argument, the start symbol (label) must point to a section. The linker locates this section such that the start symbol ends up on the start address.

```
space space_name
{
    id = 1;
    mau = 8;
    align = 8;
    page_size = 1;
    stack_name (min_size = 1k, grows = low_to_high);
    reserved start_address .. end_address;
    start_address ( run_addr = 0x0000,
                   symbol = "start_label" )
    map ( map_description );
}
```

## 5.5.4 Mappings

You can use a mapping when you define a space, bus or memory. With the **map** field you specify how addresses from the source (space, bus or memory) are translated to addresses of a destination (space, bus). The following mappings are possible:

- space => space
- space => bus
- bus => bus
- memory => bus

With a mapping you specify a range of source addresses you want to map (specified by a source offset and a size), the destination to which you want to map them (a bus or another address space), and the offset address in the destination.

- The **dest** argument specifies the destination. This can be a **bus** or another address **space** (only for a space to space mapping). This argument is required.
- The **src\_offset** argument specifies the offset of the source addresses. In combination with size, this specifies the range of address that are mapped. By default the source offset is 0x0000.
- The **size** argument specifies the number of addresses that are mapped. This argument is required.
- The **dest\_offset** argument specifies the position in the destination to which the specified range of addresses is mapped. By default the destination offset is 0x0000.

If you are mapping a bus to another bus, the number of data lines of each bus may differ. In this case you have to specify a range of source data lines you want to map (**src\_dbits** = *begin..end*) and the range of destination data lines you want to map them to (**dest\_dbits** = *first..last*).

- The **src\_dbits** argument specifies a range of data lines of the source bus. By default all data lines are mapped.
- The **dest\_dbits** argument specifies a range of data lines of the destination bus. By default, all data lines from the source bus are mapped on the data lines of the destination bus (starting with line 0).

### From space to space

If you map an address space to another address space (nesting), you can do this by mapping the subspace to the containing larger space. In this example a small space of 64k is mapped on a large space of 16M.

```
space small
{
    id = 2;
    mau = 4;
    map (src_offset = 0, dest_offset = 0,
        dest = space : large, size = 64k);
}
```

### From space to bus

All spaces that are not mapped to another space must map to a bus in the architecture:

```
space large
{
    id = 1;
    mau = 4;
    map (src_offset = 0, dest_offset = 0,
        dest = bus:bus_name, size = 16M );
}
```

### From bus to bus

The next example maps an external bus called e\_bus to an internal bus called i\_bus. This internal bus resides on a core called mycore. The source bus has 16 data lines whereas the destination bus has only 8 data lines. Therefore, the keywords **src\_dbits** and **dest\_dbits** specify which source data lines are mapped on which destination data lines.

```
architecture mycore
{
    bus i_bus
    {
        mau = 4;
    }

    space i_space
    {
        map (dest=bus:i_bus, size=256);
    }
}

bus e_bus
{
    mau = 16;
    width = 16;
    map (dest = bus:mycore:i_bus, src_dbits = 0..7, dest_dbits = 0..7 )
}
```



It is not possible to map an internal bus to an external bus.

## 5.6 Semantics of the Derivative Definition

---

### Keywords in the derivative definition

```
derivative
  extends
core
  architecture
bus
  mau
  width
  map
memory
  type          reserved rom ram nvram
  mau
  size
  speed
  map
section_layout
section_setup

  map
    dest          bus space
    dest_dbits
    dest_offset
    size
    src_dbits
    src_offset
```

### 5.6.1 Defining a Derivative

With the keyword **derivative** you define a derivative and assign a unique name to it. The name is used to refer to it at other places in the LSL file:

```
derivative name
{
  definitions
}
```

If you are defining multiple derivatives that show great resemblance, you can define the common features in a parent derivative and extend this with a child derivative that contains specific features. The child inherits all features of the parent (cores and memories). With the keyword **extends** you create a child derivative:

```
derivative name_child_deriv extends name_parent_deriv
{
  definitions
}
```

As with a core architecture, a derivative can have any number of parameters. These are identifiers which get values assigned on instantiation or extension of the derivative. You can use them in any expression within the derivative definition.

```
derivative name_child_deriv (parm1,parm2=1)
  extends name_parent_derivh (arguments)
{
  definitions
}
```

### 5.6.2 Instantiating Core Architectures

With the keyword **core** you instantiate a core architecture in a derivative.



- With the keyword **architecture** you tell the linker that the given core has a certain architecture. The architecture name refers to an existing architecture definition in the same LSL file.

For example, if you have two cores (called `mycore_1` and `mycore_2`) that have the same architecture (called `mycorearch`), you must instantiate both cores as follows:

```
core mycore_1
{
    architecture = mycorearch;
}

core mycore_2
{
    architecture = mycorearch;
}
```

If the architecture definition has parameters you must specify the arguments that correspond with the parameters. For example `mycorearch1` expects two parameters which are used in the architecture definition:

```
core mycore
{
    architecture = mycorearch1 (1,2);
}
```

### 5.6.3 Defining Internal Memory and Buses

With the **memory** keyword you define physical memory that is present on the target board. The memory name is used to identify the memory and does not conflict with other identifiers. It is common to define internal memory (on-chip) in the derivative definition. External memory (off-chip memory) is usually defined in the board specification (See section 5.7.3, [Defining External Memory and Buses](#)).

- The **type** field specifies a memory type:
  - rom**: read only memory – it can only be written at load-time
  - ram**: random access volatile writable memory – writing at run-time is possible while writing at load-time has no use since the data is not retained after a power-down
  - nvr**: non volatile ram – writing is possible both at load-time and run-time

The optional **reserved** qualifier before the memory type, tells the linker not to locate any section in the memory by default. You can locate sections in such memories using an absolute address or range restriction (see subsection [Locating a group](#) in section 5.9.2, [Creating and Locating Groups of Sections](#)).

- The **mau** field specifies the MAU size (Minimum Addressable Unit) of the memory. This field is required.
- The **size** field specifies the size in MAU of the memory. This field is required.
- The **speed** field specifies a symbolic speed for the memory (1..4): 1 is the fastest, 4 the slowest. The linker uses the relative speed of the memories in such a way, that optimal speed is achieved. The default speed is 1.
- The **map** field specifies how this memory maps onto an (internal) bus. Mappings are described in section 5.5.4, [Mappings](#).

```
memory mem_name
{
    type = rom;
    mau = 8;
    size = 64k;
    speed = 2;
    map ( map_description );
}
```

With the **bus** keyword you define a bus in a derivative definition. Buses are described in section 5.5.2, [Defining Internal Buses](#).

## 5.7 Semantics of the Board Specification

### Keywords in the board specification

```
processor
  derivative
bus
  mau
  width
  map
memory
  type          reserved rom ram nvram
  mau
  size
  speed
  map
  map
    dest          bus space
    dest_dbits
    dest_offset
    size
    src_dbits
    src_offset
```

### 5.7.1 Defining a Processor

If you have a target board with multiple processors that have the same derivative, you need to instantiate each individual processor in a processor definition. This information tells the linker which processor has which derivative and enables the linker to distinguish between the present processors.



If you use processors that all have a unique derivative, you may omit the processor definitions. In this case the linker assumes that for each derivative definition in the LSL file there is one processor. The linker uses the derivative name also for the processor.

With the keyword **processor** you define a processor. You can freely choose the processor name. The name is used to refer to it at other places in the LSL file:

```
processor proc_name
{
  processor definition
}
```

### 5.7.2 Instantiating Derivatives

With the keyword **derivative** you tell the linker that the given processor has a certain derivative. The derivative name refers to an existing derivative definition in the same LSL file.

For examples, if you have two processors on your target board (called `myproc_1` and `myproc_2`) that have the same derivative (called `myderiv`), you must instantiate both processors as follows:

```
processor myproc_1
{
  derivative = myderiv;
}

processor myproc_2
{
  derivative = myderiv;
}
```

If the derivative definition has parameters you must specify the arguments that correspond with the parameters. For example `myderiv1` expects two parameters which are used in the derivative definition:

```
processor myproc
{
    derivative = myderiv1 (2,4);
}
```

### 5.7.3 Defining External Memory and Buses

It is common to define external memory (off-chip) and external buses at the global scope (outside any enclosing definition). Internal memory (on-chip memory) is usually defined in the scope of a derivative definition.

With the keyword **memory** you define physical memory that is present on the target board. The memory name is used to identify the memory and does not conflict with other identifiers. If you define memory parts in the LSL file, only the memory defined in these parts is used for placing sections.

If no external memory is defined in the LSL file and if the linker option to allocate memory on demand is set then the linker will assume that all virtual addresses are mapped on physical memory. You can override this behavior by specifying one or more memory definitions.

```
memory mem_name
{
    type = rom;
    mau = 8;
    size = 64k;
    speed = 2;
    map ( map_description );
}
```



For a description of the keywords, see section 5.6.3, [Defining Internal Memory and Buses](#).

With the keyword **bus** you define a bus (the combination of data and corresponding address bus). The bus name is used to identify a bus and does not conflict with other identifiers. Bus descriptions at the global scope (outside any definition) define *external* buses. These are buses that are present on the target board.

```
bus bus_name
{
    mau = 8;
    width = 8;
    map ( map_description );
}
```



For a description of the keywords, see section 5.5.2, [Defining Internal Buses](#).

You can connect off-chip memory to any derivative: you need to map the off-chip memory to a bus and map that bus on the internal bus of the derivative you want to connect it to.

## 5.8 Semantics of the Section Setup Definition

---

### Keywords in the section setup definition

```
section_setup
  stack
    min_size
    grows          low_to_high  high_to_low
    align
    fixed
    id
  heap
    min_size
    grows          low_to_high  high_to_low
    align
    fixed
    id
  vector_table
    vector_size
    size
    id_symbol_prefix
    run_addr
    template
    template_symbol
    vector_prefix
    fill
    no_inline
    copy
    vector
      id
      fill          loop
  reserved
```

### 5.8.1 Setting up a Section

With the keyword **section\_setup** you can define stacks, heaps, vector tables, and/or reserved address ranges outside their address space definition.

```
section_setup ::my_space
{
  vector table statements
  reserved address range
  stack definition
  heap definition
}
```



See the subsections [Stacks and heaps](#), [Vector table](#) and [Reserved address ranges](#) in section 5.5.3, [Defining Address Spaces](#), for details on the keywords **stack**, **heap**, **vector\_table** and **reserved**.

## 5.9 Semantics of the Section Layout Definition

### Keywords in the section layout definition

```
section_layout
  direction      low_to_high  high_to_low
group
  align
  attributes      + -  r w x b i s
  copy
  nocopy
  fill
  ordered
  contiguous
  clustered
  overlay
  allow_cross_references
  load_addr
    mem
  run_addr
    mem
  page
  page_size
  priority
select
stack
  size
heap
  size
reserved
  size
  attributes      r w x
  fill
  alloc_allowed absolute
copytable
section
  size
  blocksize
  attributes      r w x
  fill
  overflow

if
else
```

### 5.9.1 Defining a Section Layout

With the keyword **section\_layout** you define a section layout for exactly one address space. In the section layout you can specify how input sections are placed in the address space, relative to each other, and what the absolute run and load addresses of each section will be.

You can define one or more section definitions. Each section definition arranges the sections in one address space. You can precede the address space name with a processor name and/or core name, separated by colons. You can omit the processor name and/or the core name if only one processor is defined and/or only one core is present in the processor. A reference to a space in the only core of the only processor in the system would look like `::my_space`. A reference to a space of the only core on a specific processor in the system could be `my_chip::my_space`. The next example shows a section definition for sections in the `my_space` address space of the processor called `my_chip`:

```
section_layout my_chip::my_space ( locate_direction )
{
    section statements
}
```

With the optional keyword **direction** you specify whether the linker starts locating sections from **low\_to\_high** (default) or from **high\_to\_low**. In the second case the linker starts locating sections at the highest addresses in the address space but preserves the order of sections when necessary (one processor and core in this example).

```
section_layout ::my_space ( direction = high_to_low )
{
    section statements
}
```



If you do not explicitly tell the linker how to locate a section, the linker decides on the basis of the section attributes in the object file and the information in the architecture definition and memory parts where to locate the section.

## 5.9.2 Creating and Locating Groups of Sections

Sections are located per group. A group can contain one or more (sets of) input sections as well as other groups. Per group you can assign a mutual order to the sets of sections and locate them into a specific memory part.

```
group ( group_specifications )
{
    section_statements
}
```

With the *section\_statements* you generally select sets of sections to form the group. This is described in subsection [Selecting sections for a group](#).

Instead of selecting sections, you can also modify special sections like stack and heap or create a reserved section. This is described in section 5.9.3, [Creating or Modifying Special Sections](#).

With the *group\_specifications* you actually locate the sections in the group. This is described in subsection [Locating a group](#).

### Selecting sections for a group

With the **select** keyword you can select one or more sections for the group. You can select a section by name or by attributes. If you select a section by name, you can use a wildcard pattern:

"*"	matches with all section names
"?"	matches with a single character in the section name
"\"	takes the next character literally
"[abc]"	matches with a single 'a', 'b' or 'c' character
"[a-z]"	matches with any single character in the range 'a' to 'z'

```
group ( ... )
{
    select "mysection";
    select "*";
}
```

The first **select** statement selects the section with the name "mysection". The second **select** statement selects all sections that were not selected yet.

A section is selected by the first **select** statement that matches, in the union of all section layouts for the address space. Global section layouts are processed in the order in which they appear in the LSL file. Internal core architecture section layouts always take precedence over global section layouts.

- The **attributes** field selects all sections that carry (or do not carry) the given attribute. With **+attribute** you select sections that have the specified attribute set. With **-attribute** you select sections that do not have the specified attribute set. You can specify one or more of the following attributes:
  - **r** readable sections
  - **w** writable sections

- **x** executable sections
- **i** initialized sections
- **b** sections that should be cleared at program startup
- **s** scratch sections (not cleared and not initialized)

To select all read-only sections:

```
group ( ... )
{
    select (attributes = +r-w);
}
```



Keep in mind that all section selections are restricted to the address space of the section layout in which this group definition occurs.

- With the **ref\_tree** field you can select a group of related sections. The relation between sections is often expressed by means of references. By selecting just the 'root' of tree, the complete tree is selected. This is for example useful to locate a group of related sections in special memory (e.g. fast memory). The (referenced) sections must meet the following conditions in order to be selected:
  1. The sections are within the section layout's address space
  2. The sections match the specified attributes
  3. The sections have no absolute restriction (as is the case for all wildcard selections)

For example, to select the code sections referenced from `foo1`:

```
group refgrp (ordered, contiguous, run_addr=mem:ext_c)
{
    select ref_tree "foo1" (attributes=+x);
}
```

If section `foo1` references `foo2` and `foo2` references `foo3`, then all these sections are selected by the selection shown above.

### Locating a group

```
group group_name ( group_specifications )
{
    section_statements
}
```

With the *group\_specifications* you actually define how the linker must locate the group. You can roughly define three things: 1) assign properties to the group like alignment and read/write attributes, 2) define the mutual order in the address space for sections in the group and 3) restrict the possible addresses for the sections in a group.

The linker creates labels that allow you to refer to the begin and end address of a group from within the application software. Labels `__lc_gb_group_name` and `__lc_ge_group_name` mark the begin and end of the group respectively, where the begin is the lowest address used within this group and the end is the highest address used. Notice that a group not necessarily occupies all memory between begin and end address. The given label refers to where the section is located at run-time (versus load-time).

1. Assign properties to the group like alignment and read/write attributes.

These properties are assigned to all sections in the group (and subgroups) and override the attributes of the input sections.

  - The **align** field tells the linker to align all sections in the group and the group as a whole according to the align value. By default the linker uses the largest alignment constraint of either the input sections or the alignment of the address space.
  - The **attributes** field tells the linker to assign one or more attributes to all sections in the group. This overrules the default attributes. By default the linker uses the attributes of the input sections. You can set the **r**, **w** or **rw** attributes and you can switch between the **b** and **s** attributes.
  - The **copy** field tells the linker to locate a read-only section in RAM and generate a ROM copy and a copy action in the copy table. This property makes the sections in the group writable which causes the linker to generate ROM copies for the sections.

- The effect of the **nocopy** field is the opposite of the copy field. It prevents the linker from generating ROM copies of the selected sections.

2. Define the mutual order of the sections in the group.

By default, a group is *unrestricted* which means that the linker has total freedom to place the sections of the group in the address space.

- The **ordered** keyword tells the linker to locate the sections in the same order in the address space as they appear in the group (but not necessarily adjacent).

Suppose you have an ordered group that contains the sections 'A', 'B' and 'C'. By default the linker places the sections in the address space like 'A' - 'B' - 'C', where section 'A' gets the lowest possible address. With **direction=high\_to\_low** in the **section\_layout** space properties, the linker places the sections in the address space like 'C' - 'B' - 'A', where section 'A' gets the highest possible address.

- The **contiguous** keyword tells the linker to locate the sections in the group in a single address range. Within a contiguous group the input sections are located in arbitrary order, however the group occupies one contiguous range of memory. Due to alignment of sections there can be 'alignment gaps' between the sections.

When you define a group that is both **ordered** and **contiguous**, this is called a *sequential* group. In a sequential group the linker places sections in the same order in the address space as they appear in the group and it occupies a contiguous range of memory.

- The **clustered** keyword tells the linker to locate the sections in the group in a number of *contiguous* blocks. It tries to keep the number of these blocks to a minimum. If enough memory is available, the group will be located as if it was specified as **contiguous**. Otherwise, it gets split into two or more blocks.

If a contiguous or clustered group contains *alignment gaps*, the linker can locate sections that are not part of the group in these gaps. To prevent this, you can use the **fill** keyword. If the group is located in RAM, the gaps are treated as reserved (scratch) space. If the group is located in ROM, the alignment gaps are filled with zeros by default. You can however change the fill pattern by specifying a bit pattern. The result of the expression, or list of expressions, is used as values to write to memory, each in MAU.

- The **overlay** keyword tells the linker to overlay the sections in the group. The linker places all sections in the address space using a contiguous range of addresses. (Thus an overlay group is automatically also a contiguous group.) To overlay the sections, all sections in the overlay group share the same run-time address.

For each input section within the overlay the linker automatically defines two symbols. The symbol

`__lc_cb_section_name` is defined as the load-time start address of the section. The symbol

`__lc_ce_section_name` is defined as the load-time end address of the section. C (or assembly) code may be used to copy the overlaid sections.

If sections in the overlay group contain references between groups, the linker reports an error. The keyword **allow\_cross\_references** tells the linker to accept cross-references. Normally, it does not make sense to have references between sections that are overlaid.

```
group ovl (overlay)
{
    group a
    {
        select "my_ovl_p1";
        select "my_ovl_p2";
    }
    group b
    {
        select "my_ovl_q1";
    }
}
```



It may be possible that one of the sections in the overlay group already has been defined in another group where it received a load-time address. In this case the linker does not overrule this load-time address and excludes the section from the overlay group.



3. Restrict the possible addresses for the sections in a group.

The load-time address specifies where the group's elements are loaded in memory at download time. The run-time address specifies where sections are located at run-time, that is when the program is executing. If you do not explicitly restrict the address in the LSL file, the linker assigns addresses to the sections based on the restrictions relative to other sections in the LSL file and section alignments. The program is responsible for copying overlay sections at appropriate moment from its load-time location to its run-time location (this is typically done by the startup code).

- The **run\_addr** keyword defines the run-time address. If the run-time location of a group is set explicitly, the given order between groups specify whether the run-time address propagates to the parent group or not. The location of the sections a group can be restricted either to a single absolute address, or to a number of address ranges. With an *expression* you can specify that the group should be located at the absolute address specified by the expression:

```
group (run_addr = 0xa00f0000)
```

You can use the '[offset]' variant to locate the group at the given absolute offset in memory:

```
group (run_addr = mem:A[0x1000])
```

A range can be an absolute space address range, written as [ *expr* .. *expr* ], a complete memory device, written as **mem:mem\_name**, or a memory address range,

```
mem:mem_name[expr .. expr]
```

```
group (run_addr = mem:my_dram)
```

You can use the '|' to specify an address range of more than one physical memory device:

```
group (run_addr = mem:A | mem:B)
```

- The **load\_addr** keyword changes the meaning of the section selection in the group: the linker selects the load-time ROM copy of the named section(s) instead of the regular sections. Just like **run\_addr** you can specify an absolute address or an address range.

The **load\_addr** keyword itself (without an assignment) specifies that the group's position in the LSL file defines its load-time address.

```
group (load_addr)
    select "mydata"; // select ROM copy of mydata: "[mydata]"
```

The load-time and run-time addresses of a group cannot be set at the same time. If the load-time property is set for a group, the group (only) restricts the positioning at load-time of the group's sections. It is not possible to set the address of a group that has a not-unrestricted parent group.

The properties of the load-time and run-time start address are:

- At run-time, before using an element in an overlay group, the application copies the sections from their load location to their run-time location, but only if these two addresses are different. For non-overlay sections this happens at program start-up.
- The start addresses cannot be set to absolute values for unrestricted groups.
- For non-overlay groups that do not have an overlay parent, the load-time start address equals the run-time start address.
- For any group, if the run-time start address is not set, the linker selects an appropriate address.
- If an ordered group or sequential group has an absolute address and contains sections that have separate page restrictions (not defined in LSL), all those sections are located in a single page. In other cases, for example when an unrestricted group has an address range assigned to it, the paged sections may be located in different pages.

For overlays, the linker reserves memory at the run-time start address as large as the largest element in the overlay group.

- The **page** keyword tells the linker to place the group in one page. Instead of specifying a run-time address, you can specify a page and optional a page number. Page numbers start from zero. If you omit the page number, the linker chooses a page.

The **page** keyword refers to pages in the address space as defined in the architecture definition.

- With the **page\_size** keyword you can override the page alignment and size set on the address space. When you set the page size to zero, the linker removes simple (auto generated) page restrictions from the selected sections. See also the **page\_size** keyword in section 5.5.3, [Defining Address Spaces](#).

```
group (page, ... )
group (page = 3, ...)
```

- With the **priority** keyword you can change the order in which sections are located. This is useful when some sections are considered important for good performance of the application and a small amount of fast memory is available. The value is a number for which the default is 1, so higher priorities start at 2. Sections with a higher priority are located before sections with a lower priority, unless their relative locate priority is already determined by other restrictions like **run\_addr** and **page**.

```
group (priority=2)
{
    select "importantcode1";
    select "importantcode2";
}
```

### 5.9.3 Creating or Modifying Special Sections

Instead of selecting sections, you can also create a reserved section or an output section or modify special sections like a stack or a heap. Because you cannot define these sections in the input files, you must use the linker to create them.

#### Stack

- The keyword **stack** tells the linker to reserve memory for the stack. The name for the stack section refers to the stack as defined in the architecture definition. If no name was specified in the architecture definition, the default name is **stack**.

With the keyword **size** you can specify the size for the stack. If the **size** is not specified, the linker uses the size given by the **min\_size** argument as defined for the stack in the architecture definition. Normally the linker automatically tries to maximize the size, unless you specified the keyword **fixed**.

```
group ( ... )
{
    stack "mystack" ( size = 2k );
}
```

The linker creates two labels to mark the begin and end of the stack, **\_\_1c\_ub\_stack\_name** for the begin of the stack and **\_\_1c\_ue\_stack\_name** for the end of the stack. The linker allocates space for the stack when there is a reference to either of the labels.

See also the **stack** keyword in section 5.5.3, [Defining Address Spaces](#).

#### Heap

- The keyword **heap** tells the linker to reserve a dynamic memory range for the `malloc()` function. Optionally you can assign a name to the heap section. With the keyword **size** you can change the size for the heap. If the **size** is not specified, the linker uses the size given by the **min\_size** argument as defined for the heap in the architecture definition. Normally the linker automatically tries to maximize the size, unless you specified the keyword **fixed**.

```
group ( ... )
{
    heap "myheap" ( size = 2k );
}
```

The linker creates two labels to mark the begin and end of the heap, **\_\_1c\_ub\_heap\_name** for the begin of the heap and **\_\_1c\_ue\_heap\_name** for the end of the heap. The linker allocates space for the heap when a reference to either of the section labels exists in one of the input object files.

#### Reserved section

- The keyword **reserved** tells the linker to create an area or section of a given size. The linker will not locate any other sections in the memory occupied by a reserved section, with some exceptions. Optionally you can assign a name to a reserved section. With the keyword **size** you can specify a size for a given reserved area or section.

```
group ( ... )
{
    reserved "myreserved" ( size = 2k );
}
```

The optional **fill** field contains a bit pattern that the linker writes to all memory addresses that remain unoccupied during the locate process. The result of the expression, or list of expressions, is used as values to write to memory, each in MAU. The first MAU of the fill pattern is always the first MAU in the section.

By default, no sections can overlap with a reserved section. With **alloc\_allowed=absolute** sections that are located at an absolute address due to an absolute group restriction can overlap a reserved section.

With the **attributes** field you can set the access type of the reserved section. The linker locates the reserved section in its space with the restrictions that follow from the used attributes, **r**, **w** or **x** or a valid combination of them. The allowed attributes are shown in the following table. A value between < and > in the table means this value is set automatically by the linker.

Properties set in LSL		Resulting section properties		
<b>attributes</b>	<b>filled</b>	<b>access</b>	<b>memory</b>	<b>content</b>
x	yes		<rom>	executable
r	yes	r	<rom>	data
r	no	r	<rom>	scratch
rx	yes	r	<rom>	executable
rw	yes	rw	<ram>	data
rw	no	rw	<ram>	scratch
rwX	yes	rw	<ram>	executable

```
group ( ... )
{
    reserved "myreserved" ( size = 2k,
        attributes = rw, fill = 0xaa );
}
```

If you do not specify any attributes, the linker will reserve the given number of maus, no matter what type of memory lies beneath. If you do not specify a fill pattern, no section is generated.

The linker creates two labels to mark the begin and end of the section, **\_\_lc\_ub\_name** for the start, and **\_\_lc\_ue\_name** for the end of the reserved section.

### Output sections

- The keyword **section** tells the linker to accumulate sections obtained from object files ("input sections") into an output section of a fixed size in the locate phase. You can select the input sections with **select** statements. You can use groups inside output sections, but you can only set the **align**, **attributes** and **load\_addr** attributes.

The **fill** field contains a bit pattern that the linker writes to all unused space in the output section. When all input sections have an image (code/data) you must specify a fill pattern. If you do not specify a fill pattern, all input sections must be scratch sections. The fill pattern is aligned at the start of the output section.

As with a reserved section you can use the **attributes** field to set the access type of the output section.

```
group ( ... )
{
    section "myoutput" ( size = 4k, attributes = rw, fill = 0xaa )
    {
        select "myinput1";
        select "myinput2";
    }
}
```

The available room for input sections is determined by the **size**, **blocksize** and **overflow** fields. With the keyword **size** you specify the fixed size of the output section. Input sections are placed from output section start towards higher addresses (offsets). When the end of the output section is reached and one or more input sections are not yet placed, an error is emitted. If however, the **overflow** field is set to another output section, remaining sections are located as if they were selected for the overflow output section.

```
group ( ... )
{
    section "tsk1_data" (size=4k, attributes=rw, fill=0,
                       overflow = "overflow_data")
    {
        select ".data.tsk1.*"
    }
    section "tsk2_data" (size=4k, attributes=rw, fill=0,
                       overflow = "overflow_data")
    {
        select ".data.tsk2.*"
    }
    section "overflow_data" (size=4k, attributes=rx,
                           fill=0)
    {
    }
}
```

With the keyword **blocksize**, the size of the output section will adapt to the size of its content. For example:

```
group flash_area (run_addr = 0x10000)
{
    section "flash_code" (blocksize=4k, attributes=rx,
                        fill=0)
    {
        select ".*.flash";
    }
}
```

If the content of the section is 1 mau, the size will be 4k, if the content is 11k, the section will be 12k, etc. If you use **size** in combination with **blocksize**, the **size** value is used as default (minimal) size for this section. If it is omitted, the default size will be of **blocksize**. It is not allowed to omit both **size** and **blocksize** from the section definition.

The linker creates two labels to mark the begin and end of the section, **\_\_lc\_ub\_name** for the start, and **\_\_lc\_ue\_name** for the end of the output section.

### Copy table

- The keyword **copytable** tells the linker to select a section that is used as *copy table*. The content of the copy table is created by the linker. It contains the start address and length of all sections that should be initialized by the startup code.

The linker creates two labels to mark the begin and end of the section, **\_\_lc\_ub\_table** for the start, and **\_\_lc\_ue\_table** for the end of the copy table. The linker generates a copy table when a reference to either of the section labels exists in one of the input object files.

## 5.9.4 Creating Symbols

You can tell the linker to create symbols before locating by putting assignments in the section layout definition. Symbol names are represented by double-quoted strings. Any string is allowed, but object files may not support all characters for symbol names. You can use two different assignment operators. With the simple assignment operator '=', the symbol is created unconditionally. With the ':=' operator, the symbol is only created if it already exists as an undefined reference in an object file.

The expression that represents the value to assign to the symbol may contain references to other symbols. If such a referred symbol is a special section symbol, creation of the symbol in the left hand side of the assignment will cause creation of the special section.

```
section_layout
{
    "__lc_bs" := "__lc_ub_stack";
    // when the symbol __lc_bs occurs as an undefined reference
    // in an object file, the linker allocates space for the stack
}
```

## 5.9.5 Conditional Group Statements

Within a group, you can conditionally select sections or create special sections.

- With the **if** keyword you can specify a condition. The succeeding section statement is executed if the condition evaluates to TRUE (1).
- The optional **else** keyword is followed by a section statement which is executed in case the if-condition evaluates to FALSE (0).

```
group ( ... )  
{  
    if ( exists ( "mysection" ) )  
        select "mysection";  
    else  
        reserved "myreserved" ( size=2k );  
}
```



## Index

### A

Address spaces, [5-15](#)

align, [1-10](#)

Alignment gaps, [5-28](#)

Architecture definition, [5-1](#), [5-14](#)

arg, [1-6](#)

Assembler directives

*.align*, [1-10](#)

*.break*, [1-11](#)

*.bs*, [1-12](#)

*.bsb*, [1-12](#)

*.bsbit*, [1-12](#)

*.bsh*, [1-12](#)

*.bsl*, [1-12](#)

*.bsw*, [1-12](#)

*.calls*, [1-13](#)

*.db*, [1-14](#)

*.dbit*, [1-15](#)

*.define*, [1-16](#)

*.dh*, [1-17](#)

*.dl*, [1-18](#)

*.ds*, [1-19](#)

*.dsb*, [1-19](#)

*.dsbit*, [1-19](#)

*.dsh*, [1-19](#)

*.dsl*, [1-19](#)

*.dsw*, [1-19](#)

*.dw*, [1-20](#)

*.end*, [1-21](#)

*.equ*, [1-22](#)

*.extern*, [1-23](#)

*.for/.endfor*, [1-24](#)

*.gen*, [1-25](#)

*.global*, [1-26](#)

*.if/.elif/.else/.endif*, [1-27](#)

*.include*, [1-28](#)

*.label*, [1-29](#)

*.list/.nolist*, [1-30](#)

*.macro/.endm*, [1-31](#)

*.message*, [1-33](#)

*.offset*, [1-34](#)

*.page*, [1-35](#)

*.repeat/.endrep*, [1-36](#)

*.resume*, [1-37](#)

*.section*, [1-38](#)

*.set*, [1-39](#)

*.title*, [1-40](#)

*.undef*, [1-41](#)

assembly control (overview), [1-8](#)

conditional assembly (overview), [1-9](#)

data definition (overview), [1-9](#)

detailed description, [1-10](#)

HLL (overview), [1-9](#)

listing control (overview), [1-9](#)

macros (overview), [1-9](#)

overview, [1-8](#)

storage allocation (overview), [1-9](#)

structured control statement (overview), [1-10](#)

symbol definitions (overview), [1-9](#)

weak, [1-42](#)

Assembler options, [2-1](#)

-?, [2-11](#)

--case-insensitive, [2-3](#)

--check, [2-4](#)

--cpu, [2-5](#)

--debug-info, [2-6](#)

--define, [2-7](#)

--diag, [2-8](#)

--emit-locals, [2-9](#)

--error-file, [2-10](#)

--help, [2-11](#)

--include-directory, [2-12](#)

--include-file, [2-13](#)

--list-file, [2-15](#)

--list-format, [2-16](#)

--no-warnings, [2-17](#)

--optimize, [2-18](#)

--option-file, [2-19](#)

--output, [2-20](#)

--preprocessor-type, [2-21](#)

--section-info, [2-22](#)

--symbol-scope, [2-23](#)

--verbose, [2-25](#)

--version, [2-24](#)

--warnings-as-errors, [2-26](#)

-C, [2-5](#)

-c, [2-3](#)

-D, [2-7](#)

-f, [2-19](#)

-g, [2-6](#)

-H, [2-13](#)

-I, [2-12](#)

-i, [2-23](#)

-k, [2-14](#)

-k (--keep-output-files), [2-14](#)

-L, [2-16](#)

-l, [2-15](#)

-m, [2-21](#)

-O, [2-18](#)

-o, [2-20](#)

-t, [2-22](#)

-V, [2-24](#)

-v, [2-25](#)

-w, [2-17](#)

debug information, [2-6](#), [2-9](#)

diagnostics, [2-17](#), [2-26](#)

list file, [2-15](#), [2-16](#), [2-22](#)

optimization, [2-18](#)

preprocessing, [2-7](#), [2-13](#), [2-21](#)

Assembler significant characters, [1-2](#)

Assembly expressions, [1-3](#)

## Assembly functions, 1-5

[@arg, 1-6](#)  
[@cast, 1-6](#)  
[@cnt, 1-6](#)  
[@cpu, 1-6](#)  
[@defined, 1-7](#)  
[@lsb, 1-7](#)  
[@lsw, 1-7](#)  
[@msb, 1-7](#)  
[@msw, 1-7](#)  
[@strcat, 1-7](#)  
[@strcmp, 1-7](#)  
[@strlen, 1-8](#)  
[@strpos, 1-8](#)  
[detailed description, 1-6](#)  
[overview, 1-5](#)

## Assembly syntax, 1-1

### B

## Board specification, 5-2, 5-22

## break, 1-11

## Break statement, 1-55

## bs, 1-12

## bsb, 1-12

## bsbit, 1-12

## bsh, 1-12

## bsl, 1-12

## bsw, 1-12

## Build options, include files path, 2-12, 2-37

## Bus definition, 5-2

## Buses, 5-15

### C

## Call graph, 1-13

## calls, 1-13

## cast, 1-6

## Check source code, 2-4, 2-59

## cnt, 1-6

## Command file, 2-96

## Comment, 1-1

## Comments, 5-3

## Conditional assembly, 1-47

## Conditional make rules, 2-83

## Continue statement, 1-56

## Control program, passing options, 2-78

## Control program options, 2-57

[-?, 2-68](#)  
[--adress-size, 2-58](#)  
[--check, 2-59](#)  
[--cpu, 2-60](#)  
[--create, 2-61](#)  
[--debug-info, 2-62](#)  
[--define, 2-63](#)  
[--diag, 2-64](#)  
[--dry-run, 2-65](#)  
[--error file, 2-66](#)  
[--format, 2-67](#)

## [--help, 2-68](#)

## [--include-directory, 2-69](#)

## [--keep-output-files, 2-70](#)

## [--keep-temporary-files, 2-71](#)

## [--lsl-file, 2-73](#)

## [--no-map-file, 2-74](#)

## [--no-warnings, 2-75](#)

## [--option file, 2-76](#)

## [--output, 2-77](#)

## [--pass, 2-78](#)

## [--verbose, 2-79](#)

## [--version, 2-80](#)

## [--warnings-as-errors, 2-81](#)

## [-C, 2-60](#)

## [-c, 2-61](#)

## [-D, 2-63](#)

## [-d, 2-73](#)

## [-f, 2-76](#)

## [-g, 2-62](#)

## [-I, 2-69](#)

## [-k, 2-70](#)

## [-l \(--library\), 2-72](#)

## [-n, 2-65](#)

## [-o, 2-77](#)

## [-t, 2-71](#)

## [-V, 2-80](#)

## [-v, 2-79](#)

## [-W, 2-78](#)

## [-w, 2-75](#)

## [preprocessing, 2-63](#)

## Copy table, 5-16, 5-32

## cpu, 1-6

### D

## db, 1-14

## dbit, 1-15

## Debug info, 2-62

## Debug information, 2-9

## define, 1-16

## defined, 1-7

## Defining a macro, 1-43

## Derivative definition, 5-1, 5-20

## dh, 1-17

## Directives, 1-1

## dl, 1-18

## ds, 1-19

## dsb, 1-19

## dsbit, 1-19

## dsh, 1-19

## dsl, 1-19

## dsw, 1-19

## dw, 1-20

## dyadic functions, 4-4

### E

## end, 1-21

## equ, 1-22



expression evaluator, [4-1](#)  
Expressions, [1-3](#)  
    *absolute*, [1-3](#)  
    *relative*, [1-3](#)  
    *relocatable*, [1-3](#)  
extern, [1-23](#)

## F

For statement, [1-48](#)  
for/endif, [1-24](#)  
Function, syntax, [1-5](#)

## G

gen, [1-25](#)  
Generic instructions, [1-1](#), [1-58](#)  
global, [1-26](#)

## H

Heap, [5-16](#)

## I

IEEE-695, [4-1](#)  
    *command language concept*, [4-1](#)  
    *conditional expressions*, [4-4](#)  
    *expressions*, [4-2](#)  
    *notational conventions*, [4-2](#)  
    *variables in object file*, [4-2](#)  
If statement, [1-52](#)  
if/elif/else/endif, [1-27](#)  
include, [1-28](#)  
Include directory, [2-12](#), [2-37](#), [2-69](#)  
Include file, [2-13](#)  
Input specification, [1-1](#)  
Instructions, [1-1](#)  
    *generic*, [1-1](#), [1-58](#)  
Intel hex, record type, [4-16](#)  
Intel Hex record format, [4-16](#)

## L

Label, [1-2](#)  
label, [1-29](#)  
Labels, [1-1](#)  
Librarian options  
    -?, [2-109](#)  
    -d, [2-110](#)  
    -f, [2-111](#)  
    -m, [2-112](#)  
    -p, [2-113](#)  
    -r, [2-114](#)  
    -t, [2-116](#)  
    -V, [2-117](#)  
    -w, [2-118](#)  
    -x, [2-119](#)  
    *add module*, [2-114](#)  
    *create library*, [2-114](#)  
    *delete module*, [2-110](#)  
    *extract module*, [2-119](#)

*move module*, [2-112](#)  
    *print list of objects*, [2-116](#)  
    *print list of symbols*, [2-116](#)  
    *print module*, [2-113](#)  
    *replace module*, [2-114](#)  
    *warning level*, [2-118](#)  
Libraries, linking, [2-35](#), [2-47](#)  
Library, specifying, [2-72](#)  
Linker macro, [2-30](#)  
Linker options, [2-27](#)  
    -?, [2-36](#)  
    --case-insensitive, [2-28](#)  
    --chip-output, [2-29](#)  
    --define, [2-30](#)  
    --diag, [2-31](#)  
    --error-file, [2-32](#)  
    --error-limit, [2-33](#)  
    --extern, [2-34](#)  
    --extra-verbose, [2-54](#)  
    --first-library-first, [2-35](#)  
    --help, [2-36](#)  
    --include-directory, [2-37](#)  
    --incremental, [2-38](#)  
    --keep-output-files, [2-39](#)  
    --link-only, [2-40](#)  
    --lsl-check, [2-41](#)  
    --lsl-dump, [2-42](#)  
    --lsl-file, [2-43](#)  
    --map-file, [2-44](#)  
    --map-file-format, [2-45](#)  
    --no-rescan, [2-47](#)  
    --no-rom-copy, [2-48](#)  
    --no-warnings, [2-49](#)  
    --non-romable, [2-46](#)  
    --optimize, [2-50](#)  
    --option-file, [2-51](#)  
    --output, [2-52](#)  
    --strip-debug, [2-53](#)  
    --verbose, [2-54](#)  
    --version, [2-55](#)  
    --warnings-as-errors, [2-56](#)  
    -c, [2-29](#)  
    -D, [2-30](#)  
    -d, [2-43](#)  
    -e, [2-34](#)  
    -f, [2-51](#)  
    -I, [2-37](#)  
    -k, [2-39](#)  
    -M, [2-44](#)  
    -m, [2-45](#)  
    -N, [2-48](#)  
    -O, [2-50](#)  
    -o, [2-52](#)  
    -r, [2-38](#)  
    -S, [2-53](#)  
    -V, [2-55](#)  
    -v, [2-54](#)  
    -vv, [2-54](#)

- [-w, 2-49](#)
- [diagnostics, 2-49, 2-56](#)
- [libraries, 2-47](#)
- [Map File, 2-44](#)
- [miscellaneous, 2-28, 2-30, 2-34, 2-42, 2-43](#)
- [optimization, 2-50](#)
- [output format, 2-29](#)
- Linker script file, [2-41, 2-42](#)
  - [architecture definition, 5-1](#)
  - [board specification, 5-2](#)
  - [bus definition, 5-2](#)
  - [derivative definition, 5-1](#)
  - [memory definition, 5-2](#)
  - [preprocessing, 5-3](#)
  - [processor definition, 5-2](#)
  - [section layout definition, 5-2](#)
  - [specifying, 2-43, 2-73](#)
  - [structure, 5-1](#)
- List file, [2-15, 2-16](#)
- list/nolist, [1-30](#)
- Local label override operator, [1-46](#)
- lsb, [1-7](#)
- LSL expression evaluation, [5-13](#)
- LSL functions
  - [absolute\(\), 5-5](#)
  - [addressof\(\), 5-5](#)
  - [exists\(\), 5-5](#)
  - [max\(\), 5-5](#)
  - [min\(\), 5-6](#)
  - [sizeof\(\), 5-6](#)
- LSL keywords
  - [align, 5-16, 5-27](#)
  - [alloc\\_allowed, 5-31](#)
  - [allow\\_cross\\_references, 5-28](#)
  - [architecture, 5-15, 5-20](#)
  - [attributes, 5-26, 5-27](#)
  - [blocksize, 5-32](#)
  - [bus, 5-15, 5-18, 5-23](#)
  - [clustered, 5-28](#)
  - [contiguous, 5-28](#)
  - [copy, 5-17, 5-27](#)
  - [copy\\_unit, 5-16](#)
  - [copytable, 5-16, 5-32](#)
  - [core, 5-20](#)
  - [derivative, 5-20, 5-22](#)
  - [dest, 5-16, 5-18](#)
  - [dest\\_dbits, 5-18](#)
  - [dest\\_offset, 5-18](#)
  - [direction, 5-26, 5-28](#)
  - [else, 5-33](#)
  - [extends, 5-15, 5-20](#)
  - [fill, 5-17, 5-28, 5-31](#)
  - [fixed, 5-16, 5-30](#)
  - [group, 5-26, 5-27](#)
  - [grows, 5-16](#)
  - [heap, 5-16, 5-30](#)
  - [high\\_to\\_low, 5-16, 5-26](#)
  - [id, 5-15, 5-16](#)

- [id\\_symbol\\_prefix, 5-17](#)
- [if, 5-33](#)
- [load\\_addr, 5-29](#)
- [low\\_to\\_high, 5-16, 5-26](#)
- [map, 5-15, 5-16, 5-18, 5-21](#)
- [mau, 5-15, 5-16, 5-21, 5-23](#)
- [mem, 5-29](#)
- [memory, 5-21, 5-23](#)
- [min\\_size, 5-16, 5-30](#)
- [no\\_inline, 5-17](#)
- [nocopy, 5-28](#)
- [nvram, 5-21](#)
- [ordered, 5-28](#)
- [overflow, 5-31](#)
- [overlay, 5-28](#)
- [page, 5-16, 5-29](#)
- [page\\_size, 5-16, 5-29](#)
- [priority, 5-30](#)
- [processor, 5-22](#)
- [ram, 5-21](#)
- [ref\\_tree, 5-27](#)
- [reserved, 5-18, 5-21, 5-30](#)
- [rom, 5-21](#)
- [run\\_addr, 5-17, 5-18, 5-29](#)
- [section, 5-31](#)
- [section\\_layout, 5-25](#)
- [section\\_setup, 5-24](#)
- [select, 5-26](#)
- [size, 5-17, 5-18, 5-21, 5-23, 5-30, 5-31](#)
- [space, 5-15, 5-18](#)
- [speed, 5-21, 5-23](#)
- [src\\_dbits, 5-18](#)
- [src\\_offset, 5-18](#)
- [stack, 5-16, 5-30](#)
- [start\\_address, 5-18](#)
- [symbol, 5-18](#)
- [template, 5-17](#)
- [template\\_symbol, 5-17](#)
- [type, 5-21, 5-23](#)
- [vector, 5-17](#)
- [vector\\_prefix, 5-17](#)
- [vector\\_size, 5-17](#)
- [vector\\_table, 5-17](#)
- [width, 5-15](#)

- LSL syntax, [5-3](#)
  - [architecture definition, 5-7](#)
  - [board specification, 5-10](#)
  - [bus definition, 5-6](#)
  - [derivative definition, 5-9](#)
  - [memory definition, 5-6](#)
  - [processor definition, 5-10](#)
  - [section layout definition, 5-10](#)
- lsw, [1-7](#)

## M

- Macro argument string, [1-46](#)
- Macro call, [1-1](#)
- Macro definition, [2-7, 2-63](#)

Macro operations, [1-43](#)

macro/endm, [1-31](#)

Macros, [1-43](#)

*.for directive*, [1-47](#)

*.repeat directive*, [1-47](#)

*argument concatenation*, [1-45](#)

*argument operator*, [1-45](#)

*argument string*, [1-46](#)

*calling*, [1-44](#)

*conditional assembly*, [1-47](#)

*defining*, [1-43](#)

*local label override*, [1-46](#)

*make utility*, [2-83](#)

*return decimal value operator*, [1-45](#)

*return hex value operator*, [1-46](#)

Make utility options

*-?*, [2-84](#)

*-a*, [2-85](#)

*-c*, [2-86](#)

*-D*, [2-87](#)

*-d*, [2-88](#)

*-DD*, [2-87](#)

*-dd*, [2-88](#)

*-e*, [2-89](#)

*-err*, [2-90](#)

*-f*, [2-91](#)

*-G*, [2-92](#)

*-i*, [2-93](#)

*-K*, [2-94](#)

*-k*, [2-95](#)

*-m*, [2-96](#), [2-101](#)

*-n*, [2-97](#)

*-p*, [2-98](#)

*-q*, [2-99](#)

*-r*, [2-100](#)

*-s*, [2-102](#)

*-t*, [2-103](#)

*-time*, [2-104](#)

*-V*, [2-105](#)

*-W*, [2-106](#)

*-x*, [2-107](#)

*defining a macro*, [2-83](#)

Map file generation, [2-44](#)

Mappings, [5-18](#)

MAU, [4-2](#)

Memory definition, [5-2](#)

message, [1-33](#)

monadic functions, [4-3](#)

Motorola S-record format, [4-13](#)

msb, [1-7](#)

msh, [1-7](#)

MUFOM, [4-1](#)

*AD command*, [4-5](#)

*AS command*, [4-8](#)

*AT command*, [4-7](#)

*checksum command*, [4-5](#)

*command codes*, [4-11](#)

*comment command*, [4-5](#)

*data types*, [4-3](#)

*DT command*, [4-5](#)

*first byte of language elements*, [4-10](#)

*function codes*, [4-10](#)

*functions*, [4-10](#)

*IR command*, [4-8](#)

*LD command*, [4-8](#)

*letters*, [4-10](#)

*LI command*, [4-10](#)

*loading commands*, [4-8](#)

*LR command*, [4-9](#)

*LX command*, [4-10](#)

*MB command*, [4-5](#)

*ME command*, [4-5](#)

*module level commands*, [4-5](#)

*NI command*, [4-7](#)

*NN command*, [4-7](#)

*NX command*, [4-7](#)

*processes*, [4-1](#)

*RE command*, [4-9](#)

*RI command*, [4-9](#)

*SA command*, [4-7](#)

*SB command*, [4-6](#)

*sections*, [4-6](#)

*ST command*, [4-6](#)

*TY command*, [4-8](#)

*value assignment*, [4-8](#)

*WX command*, [4-9](#)

## O

offset, [1-34](#)

Operands, [1-2](#)

Optimization, [2-18](#), [2-50](#)

Option file, [2-51](#), [2-76](#), [2-96](#)

Options, saving / restoring, [2-51](#)

## P

page, [1-35](#)

Passing options, [2-78](#)

Preprocessing, [2-7](#), [5-3](#)

Processor definition, [5-2](#), [5-22](#)

Processor options, processor definition, [2-5](#)

Processor type

*assembling for*, [2-5](#)

*compiling for*, [2-60](#)

*selecting*, [2-5](#), [2-60](#)

## R

Repeat statement, [1-51](#)

repeat/endrep, [1-36](#)

Reserved address ranges, [5-18](#)

Reset vector, [5-18](#)

resume, [1-37](#)

Return decimal value operator, [1-45](#)

Return hex value operator, [1-46](#)

## S

Section, [1-38](#)  
Section attributes, [1-38](#)  
Section information, [2-22](#)  
Section layout definition, [5-2](#), [5-25](#)  
Section setup definition, [5-24](#)  
Section types, [1-38](#)  
Sections, [1-38](#)  
    *grouping*, [5-26](#)  
set, [1-39](#)  
Special function register file, including, [2-5](#)  
Stack, [5-16](#)  
Start address, [5-18](#)  
Statement, [1-1](#)  
strcat, [1-7](#)  
strcmp, [1-7](#)  
Strings, substring, [1-4](#)  
strlen, [1-8](#)  
strpos, [1-8](#)  
Structure control expressions, [1-57](#)  
Structured control statements, [1-48](#)  
Structured control statements  
    *break*, [1-55](#)  
    *continue*, [1-56](#)  
    *expressions*, [1-57](#)  
    *for*, [1-48](#)  
    *if*, [1-52](#)

*repeat*, [1-51](#)  
    *switch*, [1-53](#)  
    *while*, [1-49](#)  
Substring, [1-4](#)  
Switch statement, [1-53](#)  
Symbol names, [1-2](#)  
Syntax error checking, [2-4](#), [2-59](#)  
Syntax of an expression, [1-3](#)

## T

TIOF, [4-1](#)  
title, [1-40](#)

## U

undef, [1-41](#)

## V

Vector table, [5-17](#)  
Version information, [2-105](#), [2-117](#)

## W

Warnings  
    *suppressing*, [2-17](#), [2-49](#), [2-75](#)  
    *treat as errors*, [2-26](#)  
weak, [1-42](#)  
While statement, [1-49](#)